



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

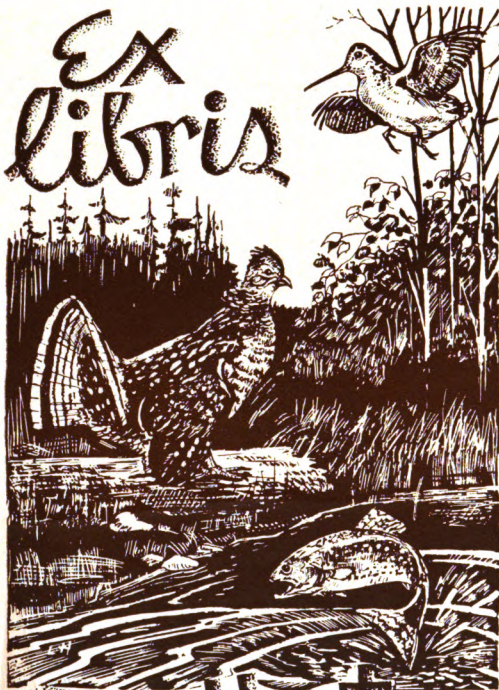
UC-NRLF



\$B 271 722

BERKELEY  
GENERAL  
LIBRARY  
UNIVERSITY OF  
CALIFORNIA

EX  
libris



Don Horter

W. J. Atkinson.















C. Hardy delin.

R. Carpenter Sculp.

## Trophies of Angling.

THE  
**ANGLER'S GUIDE,**

BEING  
*A COMPLETE PRACTICAL TREATISE*

ON  
**Angling:**

CONTAINING  
THE WHOLE ART OF TROLLING, BOTTOM AND FLOAT-  
FISHING, FLY-FISHING, AND TRIMMER-ANGLING,

FOR  
SEA, RIVER, AND POND FISH,  
FOUNDED ON FORTY YEARS' PRACTICE AND OBSERVATION.

---

**THIRD EDITION,**

WITH  
Very considerable Additions, Local Descriptions, Glossary of Technical  
Terms, and Index.

---

EMBELISHED WITH  
FIFTY-SIX COPPER-PLATE AND WOOD ENGRAVINGS.

~~~~~  
DEDICATED TO HER ROYAL HIGHNESS THE DUCHESS OF YORK.  
~~~~~

**BY T. F. SALTER, GENT.**

---

The skilful angler opes his store,  
(Paste, worms or flies, his hook sustains)  
And quickly spreads the grassy shore  
With shining spoils that crown his pains----*Brooks.*

---

LONDON:

PRINTED FOR THE AUTHOR BY CARPENTER AND SON,  
16, *Aldgate High Street;*

AND

SOLD BY T. TEGG, No. 111, CHEAPSIDE,  
And by all Booksellers and Fishing-Tackle Makers in the United Kingdom.

1815.

PRICE 12s.



SH439  
S28  
1815

# CONTENTS.



	<i>Page</i>
DEDICATION, .....	
Preface to the First Edition, .....	
Preface to the Second Edition,.....	I
Preface to the Third Edition, .....	V
The Angler's Life,.....	VII
Angler going out,.....	IX
Angler's Return, .....	XI
Angler's Song,.....	XIII
Joys of Angling,.....	XV
Angler's Progress, .....	XVII
Apology for Anglers, .....	XIX
Introductory Observations on the Nature of Fish, .....	XXV
 Chap. 1.—Choice of Tackle, &c. ....	 1
Chap. 2.—Floats and Lines, .....	5
Chap. 3.—Trolling for Jack and Pike, in what waters they abound most, and how to take them,.....	9
Chap. 4.—Trolling continued: natural and artificial Baits, and how to bait the Hooks,..	13
Chap. 5.—Trolling concluded: how to cast the Bait, and kill Jack or Pike, .....	20
Further particulars in the Addenda, .....	273
Chap. 6.—Ground-baits of various kinds, and how to make and use them, .....	36



## BOTTOM AND FLOAT-FISHING.

Chap. 7.—How to angle for and take Barbel, .....	41
Chap. 8.—Chub,.....	49
Chap. 9.—Roach, .....	53
Chap. 10.—Dace, .....	60

M844772



## CONTENTS.

Chap. 11.—Gudgeon, .....	63
Chap. 12.—Perch, .....	66
Chap. 13.—Tench, .....	72
Chap. 14.—Carp, .....	77
Chap. 15.—Trout, .....	83
Chap. 16.—Crucian or Prussian Carp, .....	97
Chap. 17.—Loach or Stone Loach, Prickleback or Stickleback., ..	99
Chap. 18.—Bleak, .....	101
Chap. 19.—Minnow, .....	103
Chap. 20.—Bream, .....	104
Chap. 21.—Nersling or Rudd,.....	106
Chap. 22.—Pope or Ruff,.....	108
Chap. 23.—Bull-head or Miller's Thumb,.....	109
Chap. 24.—Eel, .....	110
Chap. 25.—Conger or Sea Eel, .....	120
Chap. 26.—Lamprey Eel, Lampern or Seven Eyes, ..	122
Chap. 27.—Smelts and Flounders, .....	124
Chap. 28.—Grayling or Umber, Guinnaid and Charr, .....	129
Chap. 29.—Salmon,.....	132
Chap. 30.—Salt-water Fish, with remarks on the necessary tackle, and how to angle for Whiting, Cod, Plaice, Turbot, Mullet, Mackerel, Halibut, Skate, Sand- Eel or Launce, Smelts, Eel, Pout or Burbot, Sur- mullet, Groupers, Snappers, and Bass, .....	136
Chap. 31.—Pastes, .....	148
Chap. 32.—Gentles and Worms ; how to get, keep, and use them, ..	152
Chap. 33.—How to cleanse and keep Worms,.....	159

---

## FLY-FISHING.

Chap. 34.—Artificial Fly-fishing and Fly-making, Sheep-stare, Stare and Starling are the same feathers, .....	164
Chap. 35.—List of Palmers or Hackles, with and without wings, for Fly-fishing in every month of the season, be- ginning with April, .....	181
Chap. 36.—List of Artificial Flies, and the way to make them, to kill from Christmas till Michaelmas, .....	186

## CONTENTS.

---

Chap. 37.—Natural Fly-fishing, .....	191
Chap. 38.—Rods and Lines, .....	194
Chap. 39.—Whipping, casting and throwing the Line and Bait, .....	196
Chap. 40.—Fishing with Trimmers, for Jack, Pike, Eels, &c. ....	199
Chap. 41.—The River Thames and its Fishery described, .....	205
Chap. 42.—The River Lea and its Fishery described, .....	216
Chap. 43.—The Rivers Severn, Trent, Dove, Medway, &c. ...	231
Chap. 44.—The Rib, Stort, New River, Mole, Roding, and Wey, .....	234
Chap. 45.—Paddington, Camberwell, Croydon, and Sydenham Canals.—See the <i>Index</i> .....	238
Chap. 46.—Waters and Ponds near London, with observations on Pond-fishing, .....	246
Chap. 47.—Hints to Anglers; also how to chuse Gut and Hair, and to colour the same; with brief remarks on Angling in every month of the year, .....	246
Chap. 48.—Rules and Observations relative to Angling, .....	252

---

### ADDENDA;

Containing Directions for baiting Hooks with Worms, Gentles, Greaves, &c. also how to lay and bait Chain and Night-lines for Eels, how to make twisted Hair and Gut-lines, with Composition for preserving Trolling-lines, Trimmer-lines, &c. Method of Plumbing the Depth, how and when to take Jack and Pike, and Particulars respecting Ornamental Fish-ponds, .....	266
--	-----

---

### APPENDIX;

Containing Acts relative to Angling.—Observations on the Wea- ther.—Directions for the Recovery of Drowned Persons, .....	277
Glossary, .....	293
Index, .....	301



TO  
HER ROYAL HIGHNESS  
THE  
DUCHESS OF YORK.

---

MADAM,

*I AM emboldened by the knowledge that your Royal Highness occasionally enjoys the amusement of Angling, to lay this Treatise at your feet, and to offer it as an humble tribute of my profound respect for your Royal Highness's many virtues, particularly manifested in the neighbourhood of Oatlands, by your Royal Highness's condescension and goodness in educating and clothing numerous poor children. As a lover of every virtuous action, and a loyal admirer of the august house your Royal Highness is allied to, I receive infinite pleasure during my fishing excursions in the vicinity of Oatlands, in frequently hearing the voice of Gratitude detailing the many good acts of your Royal Highness. That your Royal Highness may long live to enjoy the admiration of a grateful neighbourhood, and a loyal people, and that every possible good may attend you, is the fervent prayer and wish of*

*Your Royal Highness's*

*Most dutiful,*

*And humble Servant,*

**T. F. SALTER.**





*P R E F A C E*

TO THE

**FIRST EDITION.**



**F**INDING myself unable to enjoy the pleasure of angling so frequently as I have been accustomed to do, (in consequence of declining health) I have employed some of my leisure time in writing this Work as a direction or guide to the young and inexperienced angler: the information it contains is such as has been acquired by practice and experience in the rivers and waters therein described.





**PREFACE**  
TO THE  
**SECOND EDITION.**

---

**T**HE rapid sale of the first edition of the Angler's Guide, and the approbation of its plan, expressed by many experienced anglers, have induced me to bestow considerable pains in preparing this second edition for the press; in which will be found much additional information on the natural history and habits of fish, their time of spawning, biting, &c. the making of pastes, preserving baits, &c. &c. with every other information necessary for the angler to know relative to the art of angling, for part of which I have to express my obligations to some of my experienced angling friends, who have politely communicated to me the result of many years practice and observation.

I have studiously avoided inserting in this work any thing resting on theory, being desirous of instructing the novice in the art of angling by rules drawn from practice and experience; and I have endeavoured to arrange these instructions, together with such observations as I considered necessary, in the most plain and intelligible manner.

In the Preface to the first edition I briefly, but truly, stated my motives for publishing a Treatise on Angling; and it may not be amiss also to state what have been my opportunities of acquiring a knowledge in that art which I take upon me to teach.

It has justly been observed by Addison, that people generally like to know what kind of a man an author is when they read his book; and I think there is an equal



---

curiosity to know what opportunities a man has had to perfect himself in an art which he attempts to explain to others; feeling this, I shall briefly inform my readers what my means of acquiring a knowledge in the art of angling have been.

From my very childhood till I had reached my twelfth year, I was a constant companion to my father when he took his favourite amusement of angling, (and he was a real lover of it,) which was principally in a large piece of water within a very short distance of his own house. This early practice gave me a love for the art, which increased with my years. From that time to the present, (a period of forty years) although I have resided in London and its vicinity, I have always embraced every opportunity of using the rod and line, and of obtaining every possible information on my favourite subject; for which purpose I have visited most of the places known to the London anglers, particularly those which I have described; and have remained at some of them many weeks together. On these excursions I generally went alone, that I might the better observe the various methods practised by other anglers, for I always found that my observations were more complete when uninterrupted by the questions or remarks of a companion: and beside which, having no one's inclination but my own to consult, I was never diverted from my pursuit by the caprice or fancy of a fellow sportsman. Indeed I have always been so reserved in this particular, that although a constant frequenter of the different places used by anglers, I am scarcely known by name at any

---

of them, except at Shepperton, by the Perdues the boatmen, and at the Crown at Broxbourn on the Lea.

Some years since my engagements in business, which I carried on at No. 47, Charing-Cross, rendered it impossible for me to be long absent from home at a time, I therefore chose to remain always a stranger among strangers, that I might be able to make the most of that time which I could spare. Of late years my leisure has been greater; and in my retreat, a short distance from town, I have practised and studied the subject extensively, being daily in the habit of angling, or in the company of anglers, committing to paper such memoranda as my practice and observation suggested: thus this volume has grown under my hand; in compiling which, my pen has always been guided by a love of truth, and a sincere desire to improve an art in which I so much delight;—and the publication of it proceeded wholly from a conviction that a plain practical guide was wanted, for it is of little value to the learner to be told that worms are a good bait for Carp, Gudgeons, &c.; or that Roach will take paste, Barbél greaves, or that Jack and Pike are taken with a Gudgeon, Dace, or other small fish, unless such information is accompanied with clear and practical rules how to bait the hook, at what depth to fish, what size hook is proper to use, what kind and quantity of ground-bait, how to make and cast it in, &c. for in such minute (but necessary) information theoretical writers on angling are very deficient.

By study and attention to the directions given in the following pages, accompanied with patience and prac-

---

tice, the art of taking fish with the angle may be soon attained.—Note, with the description of every fish treated of in this work is given precise directions in respect to the proper baits, the time when to angle for, &c. yet I must request the attention of my readers to that part of the work which treats of those things in a more desultory manner, under the Title of Rules, Observations, &c. relative to angling, page 252, which contains much useful information.

In this Edition will be found many additional cuts, engraved from drawings made by a very ingenious artist, from the fish immediately after they were caught, as well as other cuts, illustrative of different subjects in the art; forming in the whole, I trust, a work of amusement and instruction to the novice, and of useful reference to the experienced in angling.

A man little accustomed to arrange his ideas for the press ought, perhaps, to make some apology for the imperfections of his style; but as my desire has been only to convey plain practical rules in an art with which I considered myself well acquainted, I trust my readers will pardon the manner for the matter.

The angler envies no man's joys  
But his, who gains the greatest sport;  
With peace he dwells far from the noise  
And bustling grandeur of a court.

## P R E F A C E

TO THE

### THIRD EDITION.

---

**T**HE increasing demand for the Angler's Guide, and the very favourable manner which the said work is spoken of by the Sporting Magazine for April 1815, also by the New Monthly Magazine for May, the Eclectic Review for June, &c. fully proves that a modern practical Treatise on the Art of Angling, was wanting. The author is highly gratified to find his endeavours to instruct the novice, and to produce a work of reference and information to the more experienced lovers of angling, has been so well received; in this third edition, much valuable additional matter, together with many engravings, wood cuts, &c. relative to angling, are added. The whole of the copper-plate engravings are new, and taken from drawings made from living fish, under the author's own inspection, and as faithful delineations of the fish they are intended to represent, are far superior to any that are intended to illustrate works of a similar nature. The wood cuts are also exact copies from living fish, insects, various apparatus for angling, &c. so as to make this Treatise deserve the Title it bears of the **ANGLER'S GUIDE.**

\* a



---

---

*THE ANGLER'S LIFE.*

TUNE.—THE BIRKS OF INDERMAY.

## 1.

WHEN vernal airs perfume the fields,  
And pleasing views the landskip yields;  
The limpid stream, the scaly breed,  
Invite the angler's waving reed.  
The musing swain with pleasure sees  
The talking brook, the sighing breeze,  
The active insect's buzzing wing,  
And birds their tuneful ditties sing.

## 2.

At latest eve, at early dawn,  
The angler quests the scented lawn,  
And roams to snare the finny brood,  
The margin of the flow'ry flood.  
Now at some osier's wat'ry root  
The Chub beguiles, or painted Trout;  
No cares nor noise his senses drown,  
His pastime, ease and silence crown.

## 3.

Adieu, ye sports of noise and toil,  
That crowds in senseless strife embroil:  
The jockey's mirth, the huntsman's train,  
Debauch of health, and waste of gain.  
More mild delights my life employ,  
The angler's unexpensive joy;  
Here I can sweeten fortune's frowns,  
Nor envy kings the bliss of crowns.

M. BROWN.





THE  
*ANGLER GOING OUT.*

1.

Of all the sports and pastime  
Which happen in a year,  
To angling there are none I'm sure,  
That ever can compare.  
Then an angling we will go, we'll go, &c.

2.

For health and for diversion  
We rise at break of day,  
While sluggards on their pillows  
Doze half their time away.  
Then an angling, &c.

3.

And then unto the river  
In haste we do repair,  
To enjoy our sweet amusement,  
And breathe the wholesome air.  
Then an angling, &c.



## 4.

The gout and stone are often bred  
By lolling in a coach,  
But anglers walk, and so remain  
As sound as any Roach.

Then an angling, &c.

## 5.

The Trout, the Pike, the Salmon,  
The Barbel, Carp, and Bream,  
Afford good sport, and so the Perch,  
And Tench will do the same.

Then an angling, &c.

## 6.

But pray let us remember  
To praise the smaller fish,  
Gudgeons, Roach, Dace, and Bleak, Sirs,  
Will garnish well a dish.

Then an angling, &c.

## 7.

At night we'll take a bottle,  
Smoke, chatter, laugh and sing;  
And drink a health to absent friends,  
Not forgetting our good King.

Then an angling we will go, &c.

*Songs of the Chase.*

***THE ANGLER'S RETURN.*****BY LORD THURLOW.****1.**

WHEN the sun is shining low,  
From our easy sport we go,  
Our kettle full of fish ;  
And having spent the golden day,  
Through the meads we take our way,  
In haste to dress a dish.

**2.**

Whether it Barbel be, or Pike,  
Trout, or Silver Eel, belike,  
Or Perch, or Grayling, free ;  
Bream, or Tench, or Carp, or Bleak,  
Gudgeons, that in fords we seek,  
Or Roach or Dace it be.

## 3.

Before the fire we sit and sing,  
Content and happy as a king,  
When winds in autumn blow ;  
Employed upon our gentle themes,  
Till spring unbinds the gentle streams,  
Again to fish we'll go.



## ANGLERS REGALING.

*THE ANGLER'S SONG.*

## 1.

MAN's life is but vain, for 'tis subject to pain,  
And sorrow, and short as a bubble,  
'Tis a hodge-podge of business, and money and care,  
And care, and money, and trouble.

## 2.

But we'll take no care when the weather proves fair  
Nor will we vex now though it rain;  
We'll banish all sorrow, and sing till to-morrow,  
And angle, and angle again.

\* IZAAK WALTON.



---

---

*THE JOYS OF ANGLING,*

## A DUET.

Wrote by MISS SCOTT, of the Sans Pareil Theatre.

---

---

## 1.

ANXIOUS by the gliding stream,  
See the steady angler watch,  
Trying every wily scheme,  
The heedless finny tribe to catch.  
Hush! hush! not a breath,  
I've a nibble,—still as death;  
Strike, strike, play it, play it.  
Sure it's a weed; zounds! 'tis a weed.

## 2.

And when we get it to the shore,  
We clear our line, and try once more;  
So we fish from morn till night,  
And then we get,—get what! a bite.  
Oh, the joys,—oh, the joys,  
The joys, the joys of angling,  
The joys, the joys of angling,  
The joys, the joys of angling.

## 3.

Now the drizzling rain descends,  
Then the shelt'ring trees we court;  
Still our watchful looks we bend,  
Rain and clouds insure us sport.  
Hush! hush! I've a bite,  
We shall have rare sport to night,  
Play it, play it; strike, strike,  
How it tugs,—'tis a Pike.

4.

He weakens, now we get it to the shore,  
 He snaps our line, we are baulk'd once more;  
 Then home we go, the tale is told  
 That we have caught,—caught what! a cold.

Oh, the joys,—oh, the joys,  
 The joys, the joys of angling,  
 The joys, the joys of angling,  
 The joys, the joys of angling.

*PLEASURES OF ANGLING.*

TUNE.—All in the Downs the Ship was moor'd.

1.

All in the fragrant time of day,  
 Ere Phœbus spreads around his beams,  
 The early angler takes his way  
 To verdant banks of chrystal streams.  
 If health, content, and thoughtful musing charm,  
 What sport like angling can our cares disarm.

2.

On the soft margin softly plac'd,  
 Pleas'd, he beholds the sunny brood,  
 Through the transparent fluid haste,  
 Darting along in quest of food.  
 If health, &c.

3.

There blissful thoughts his mind engage,  
 To crowded noisy scenes unknown,  
 Wak'd by some bard's instructive page,  
 Or calm reflections, all his own.  
 If health, &c.

4.

Thus whether groves or meads he roams,  
 Or by the stream his angle tends,  
 Pleasure in sweet succession comes,  
 And the sweet rapture never ends.  
 If health, &c.

BROOKS.

THE  
*ANGLER'S PROGRESS.*

---

**W**HEN I was a mere school-boy (ere yet I'd learn'd my book),  
I felt an itch for angling in every little brook :  
With osier-rod, some thread for line, a crooked pin for hook,  
Of Pricklebacks and Minnows each day I caught a store,  
With Stone Loaches and Miller's Thumbs, those brooks afford no  
more.

Then next I bought some farthing hooks, and eke a horse-hair line,  
A hazel rod with whale-bone top, my playmates to outshine ;  
With which I soon aspired to angle with a float,  
And where I could not fish from shore, I angled from a boat.  
Then Roach and Dace, and Bleak I took, and Gudgeons without end,  
And now and then a Perch I'd hook, which made my rod to bend ;  
And thus the little angler, (pleas'd with his line and hook)  
Would shun each noisy wrangler, to fish the murm'ring brook.

Bream, Chub and Barbel, next I sought, their various haunts I try'd,  
With scower'd worms, cheese-paste, and greaves, and various baits  
beside ;  
With hooks of Kirby-bent, (well chose) and gut that's round and fine,  
So by gradations thus I rose, to fish with running-line :  
A multiplying-winch I bought, wherewith my skill to try,  
And so expert myself I thought, few with me now could vie ;  
And thus the little angler, with rod and line, and hook,  
Would shun each noisy wrangler, to fish the murm'ring brook.



---

My mind on Trolling now intent, with live or dead snap hook,  
And seldom to the rivers went, but Pike or Jack I took :  
Near banks of bullrush, sedge and reed, (a dark and windy day)  
And if the Pike were on the feed, I rarely miss'd my prey.  
If baits are fresh and proper size, no matter what's the sort,  
At Gudgeons, Roach or Dace, (they'll rise with all by turns), I've  
sport.

So now a dext'rous angler, with rod and line, and hook,  
I shun each noisy wrangler, to fish the murm'ring brook.

And now to cast a fly-line well, became my chiefest wish,  
I strove each sportman to excel, and cheat the nimble fish :  
Now Trout and Grayling I could kill, (if gloomy was the day)  
And Salmon also, (at my will) became an easy prey.  
Now flies and palmers I would dress, aquatic insects too,  
And all their various seasons guess, their uses well I knew :  
So now the perfect angler, with rod and line, and hook,  
I shun each noisy wrangler, to fish the murm'ring brook.

*Songs of the Chase.*



# APOLOGY

## FOR

### *A N G L E R S.*



**M**ANY persons consider Angling as cruel and reprehensible, and feelingly describe the sufferings and torture endured by the harmless and unoffending fish, when on the angler's hook. I certainly am ready to give those persons every credit for their humanity, and the purity of their motives, but at the same time differ widely from them on the subject;\* and I think, were the question put to them, whether we should abandon the Cod-fisheries on the score of humanity, they would pause before they answered in the affirmative: yet, what is the Cod-fishery but angling on a larger scale? Every Cod that smokes upon our board has been caught by a line and hook, and every Turbot (the pride of our tables) has been obtained by the same means; surely, then, if it is not

\* WALTON, in his *Complete Angler*, mentions the names of many learned and eminent divines in his time, who were lovers of angling. Among those of the present day, I shall mention the name of Dr. PALEY, Subdean of Lincoln, &c. who has often declared that some of the happiest days he ever spent, was in angling, doubtless, those grave personages felt satisfied, that angling was an allowable recreation.

---

a crime to angle for fish of a larger class, (inhabitants of the ocean) it cannot be criminal to take the smaller kinds that abound in our rivers. This angling on a large scale is, moreover, of such importance in a political point of view, that I think few indeed would willingly have it abandoned because the fish may suffer pain when they are hooked.—The nursery which the Newfoundland Cod-fishery affords of hardy seamen, accustomed to danger, and, in the hour of adversity, our best hope, may be reckoned as no trifling advantage resulting from the use of the *baited hook*.

That angling is justifiable, and may be practised without offence to God or man, I trust I can show, by a reference to that authority which man holds the highest. We find fishermen were among the chosen servants of our Saviour, both before and after the resurrection; and in various parts of the Old and New Testament, fishermen, angles and hooks, are mentioned, but in no instance is the practice condemned, even by implication: we find in the book of Job, and in the prophet Amos, fishermen and fishing-hooks named; and again, in the nineteenth chapter of Isaiah, it is said, "the fishers shall mourn, and they that cast their angle in the brook."

Our blessed Lord made choice of several fishermen for his apostles, (no fewer than four out of the twelve) and it was to those he appeared after his resurrection, while they were fishing, as may be seen by referring to the twenty-first chapter of St. John's gospel; and in order to convince the most incredulous that catching fish with hooks was never considered a sinful pursuit, I shall quote our Saviour's order given to the apostle St. Peter: "Go thou to the sea, and cast an

---

hook, and take up the fish that first cometh."—St. Matthew, chap. xvii.

In respect to the cruelty of Angling, it is more ideal than real; and even that beautiful passage in Shakspeare which I have sometimes heard repeated by the enemies of angling, will not apply here :

— The poor beetle that we tread upon,  
In corporal sufferance finds a pang as great  
As when a giant dies.

For fish are cold-blooded animals, and not susceptible of that acute sense of pain which other animals are : if it were otherwise, the live baits which are used in angling, could never live so long on the hook as they do, and the instances of lively, healthy fish being caught, which bear about them the marks of having been formerly hooked, would not be so numerous. But, for mere argument, allowing it to be cruel, these advocates of the finny race might as well protest against the knocking down of a bullock, or the sticking of a sheep, or the wringing the neck of a fowl, on account of its cruelty, as against the hooking of a Trout, or the spearing of an Eel.

Indeed, were the inhabitants of the streams a harmless, inoffensive race towards each other, something more might be said against the cruelty of destroying them ; but if we contrast the cruelty of the angler with the unceasing persecution which the finny tribe carry on against each other, his depredation upon them would sink into nothing. Every species of fish, either in the ocean, ponds or rivers, are at constant war, the larger chasing, wounding and destroying the

smaller;\* from the mighty Whale, and the voracious Shark, to the insignificant Muscle—all, by stratagem or open violence, prey upon each other; in some instances, even feeding on those to whom they had but recently given life.

The Whale finds a cruel and terrible enemy in the Sword-fish, on the approach of whom he becomes dreadfully alarmed, flying through the water to escape, but is eagerly pursued by this comparatively little animal, who inflicts the most severe wounds upon him, and generally succeeds in producing the death of his antagonist.

The fact is well known that the Cod-fish, taken on our coasts, are principally attracted by the Whiting, which is their most favourite food: Soles, and several other flat-fish, live chiefly on the spawn of other fish; the Crab feeds on the smaller-sized Sole; and again the Muscle makes prey of the young unwary Crab.

In fresh waters the case is similar; Jack, Pike, Salmon, Perch, Trout, Chub, Eels, &c. destroy immense numbers of

\* One in particular is most remarkable for its cunning and voracity—the Loppicus or Angler, of the order *cartilagine*, of which there are eight species. The Europæus, or European Angler, is generally found about three feet long, in shape not unlike a Tadpole, with a mouth studded with teeth. This fish frequents shallow seas, and having almost covered itself with sand, moves about its tentacula, or wattels, which other fish mistake for worms, and, in endeavouring to seize them, are caught and devoured by the Loppicus. It perhaps will not be idle to conjecture, that from this fish man first took the hint of angling with a baited hook, a practice which seems to be universal; for even in those islands discovered by Captain Cook, and others, the inhabitants, however rude and ignorant, had a method of forming hooks of bone, and attaching them to lines, for the purpose of angling.

---

their brethren daily, and, by their tyranny, keep the whole inhabitants of the rivers, lakes and ponds, in continual terror and alarm, The angler has frequent opportunities of observing the extreme distress and agitation of small fish when a Pike, or any other fish of prey, makes his appearance among them; on these occasions they are so much terrified and confused, as sometimes to leap out of the water into a boat, or on the shore, to escape the fangs of their merciless pursuers, and avoid immediate destruction.\* Among fish it may be truly said, *that might takes place of right, and the weakest go to the wall.*

I have taken several Roach and other fish, that were much disfigured and wounded, particularly on the sides, by their ravenous enemies,† which must have caused them sufferings

\* The Heron also is a great enemy to fish, for it seems, that there either is something about this bird that intices fish, (from which circumstance, some anglers think, if the bottom of the line was rubbed with Heron's fat, it would bring the fish about their hook, I have never tried the experiment), or it has the power of fascinating them, for fish continue about an Heron while it is in the water, and it feeds on them at leisure. The King Fisher destroys many fish, feeds on their flesh, and makes a nest of the bones.

The Pike, fell tyrant of the liquid plain,  
With ravenous waste devours his fellow train;  
Nor less the greedy Trout, and gutless Eel,  
Incessant woes and dire destruction deal.

† The mouth of a fish of prey, particularly the Pike, is studded with teeth in such a manner as to pierce his victim with many hundred darts at once: the large, sharp, crooked fangs in the lower jaws, the frightful expansion of which, with the horrid abyss of throat, must convey to the observer the terror and sufferings of the defence.

---

far more acute than could possibly arise from any method used by the angler, whose hook generally catches the fish by the lip or gill, parts (I conceive) not the most susceptible of pain.

less part of the finny tribe. It sometimes happens that a Jack or Pike will gorge such a quantity of fish as to appear, for a considerable time, with a part of the last even yet hanging out of the destroyer's mouth, writhing in agony: so great is their voracity.



## INTRODUCTORY OBSERVATIONS

ON THE

### *NATURE OF FISHES.*



**T**HE Rev. W. BINGLEY, in his *Animal Biography*, very justly observes, that were we acquainted with no other animals than those which inhabit the land, and breathe the air of our atmosphere, it would appear absurd to be told that any race of beings could exist only in water; we should naturally conclude, from the effect produced on our own bodies when plunged into that element, that the powers of life could not be there sustained, but we find the ocean, as well as rivers, are crowded with innumerable inhabitants, which in their construction and modes of life are as truly wonderful as those of the land—the information respecting which, however, is, and must remain, limited and imperfect, from the vast dimensions and impervious nature of the element in which they live, but that from their conformation they are well adapted to inhabit that element, may readily be discovered: their bodies are in general slender, and flattened on the sides, and somewhat pointed at the head, which greatly assists them to cut through the resisting medium which they inhabit. Some fish are endowed with such extraordinary powers of progressive motion, that they are not only able to overtake a ship, sailing ten miles an hour, but to play round it without any apparent extraordinary effort.



Their bodies are generally covered with scales, to keep them from being injured by the pressure of water, &c. Some are enveloped with a fat or oily substance, which guards them from extreme cold or putrefaction. They breathe by means of those organs placed on each side the neck, called gills—in doing this they fill their mouth with water, then throw it backward with so much force as to lift open the great flap, and force it out behind, and in the passage of this, among the feather-like recesses of the gills, the greatest part of the air it contained is left behind, and carried into the body to perform its part in the animal economy: in proof of this it has been ascertained, that if the air is by any means extracted from the water into which fish are put, they immediately come to the surface and gasp for air. Distilled water is to fish what the vacuum formed by an air pump is to most other animals. This is the reason why in winter, when a fish-pond is intirely frozen over, it is necessary to break holes in the ice, that the fish may resort there to breathe, for without this precaution they will die from the corrupt state of the water, particularly if they are numerous.

Fishes are nearly of the same specific gravity with water, and swim by means of their fins and tail, the muscular force of which is very great. Their direct motion is obtained by moving the tail from side to side, by a vibratory motion; it also acts like the rudder of a ship, and enables them to move in an opposite direction. The fins of a fish keep it upright, especially the belly-fins, which act like feet, and without which they would

---

swim or turn their bellies upwards, as the centre of gravity is near the back: this fact is easily ascertained by cutting off the belly-fins of a fish, as it will then immediately turn over with the back downwards. The air-bladder is of material assistance to fish in swimming, as it is by means of this they increase or diminish the specific gravity of their bodies. When by their abdominal muscles they press the air contained in the bladder, the bulk of their bodies is diminished, their weight, compared with that of water, is increased, and they consequently sink; if they want to rise, they relax the pressure of the muscles, the air-bladder again acquires its natural size, the body is rendered more bulky, and they ascend towards the surface. Some fish have a double bladder, and some single. The air appears to be conveyed into it from the blood, by means of vessels appropriated for the purpose, and can be discharged thence either into the stomach or mouth. When the air-bladder bursts, the fish is never afterwards able to rise. The teeth of fishes are in some situated in the jaws, in others on the tongue or palate, and also in the throat: their tongues are motionless, obtuse, and fleshy. Fish are also furnished with nostrils and olfactory nerves, and doubtless possess the sense of smelling; and that fish can hear, I have no doubt, as they have the organs of hearing complete: in some it is placed on the sides of the skull, or cavity that contains the brain. Some have the external orifice very small, placed on the upper surface of the head, but in others there is no external opening whatever.

---

The fact of fish hearing can be very easily proved by making a loud noise, or shouting to fish when they are near the surface of the water, in ponds, or on the shallows, and near the sides of rivers, and likewise to fish in the globe-glasses, or any other vessel, which I have repeatedly done, and, in consequence of such experiments, am fully convinced that fish can hear.\*

Fish feed on animal food, insects, worms, spawn of other fish, aquatic plants, on each other, and, from their ravenous nature, frequently on their own progeny. Although the stomachs of fish seem to possess no heat, yet the power of digestion is wonderfully strong, for it soon dissolves crabs, lobsters, snails, and various shell-fish, as well as those which are only covered with scales, which fish of prey generally feed on. Fishes in general are oviparous ; their fecundity greatly surpasses that of any other animals, as the spawn of a Cod is calculated to contain more than nine millions of eggs ; and upwards of a million have been taken out of a Flounder.

The longevity of fish is greater than other creatures, and much surpasses the age of man ; for it is well authenticated that in the royal ponds at Marli, in France, there are Carp which have been tamed, and preserved since the reign of Francis the First, and which have been individually known to the persons who have suc-

\* I am acquainted with a person who has a Perch in a water-butt, which he has kept several years, and which comes to the surface when the owner taps on the side of the butt with his knuckles, and the fish then receives some bread for his attention.

---

ceeded each other in the feeding them, which is done daily with bread, on their coming to the bank side, a practice that has continued since the early period above mentioned.

In the *Gmelinian edition of the Systema Naturæ*, fishes are divided into six orders:

1. *Apodal*, with bony gills and no ventral fin.
2. *Jugular*, with bony gills and ventral fins before the pectoral ones.
3. *Thoracic*, with bony gills and ventral fins placed directly under the thorax.
4. *Abdominal*, with bony gills and ventral fins placed behind the thorax.
5. *Branchiastegous*, with gills destitute of bony rays.
6. *Chondropterygious*, with cartilaginous gills.

---

Sceptics, say,  
In this wide field of wonders, can you find  
No art discover'd, or no end design'd?



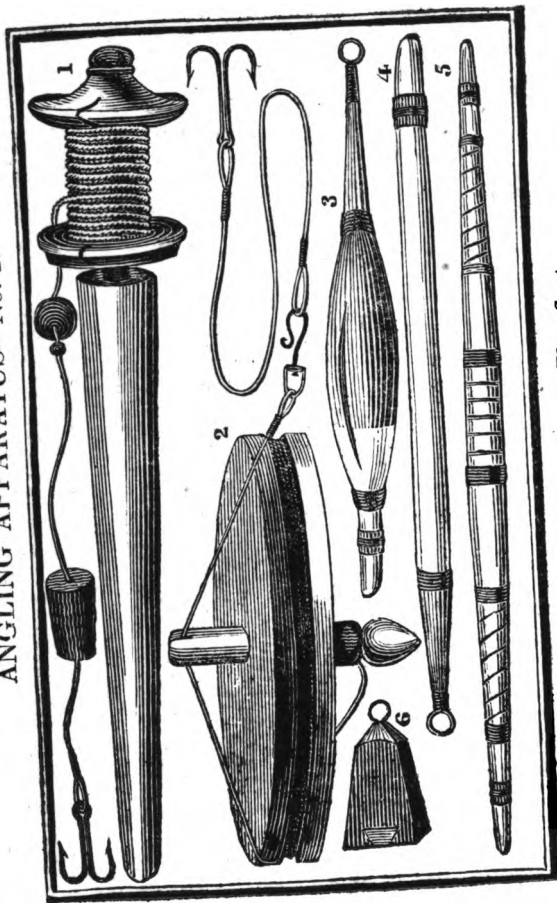








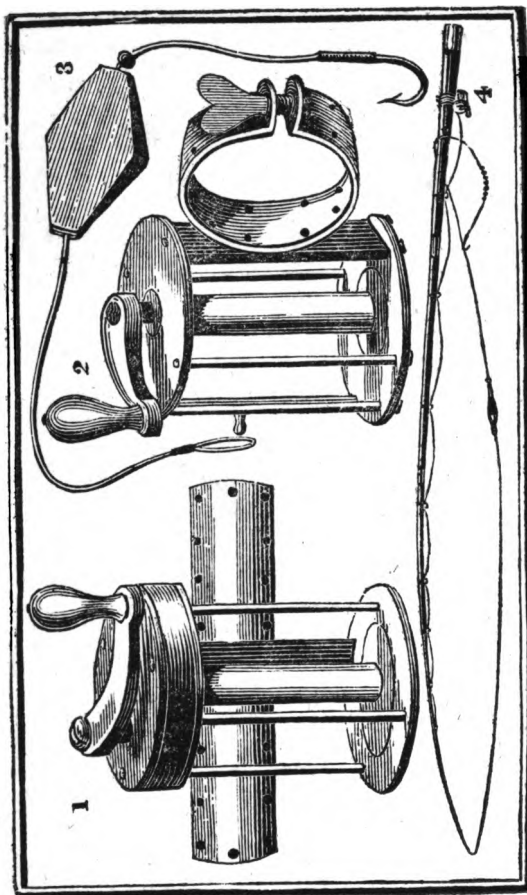
# ANGLING APPARATUS—No. 1.



- |                                |                               |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. Rank runner.                | 4. Plug float.                |
| 2. Cork or man of war trimmer. | 5. Tip capped float.          |
| 3. Cork float.                 | 6. Plummet to take the depth. |



# ANGLING APPARATUS—No. 2.



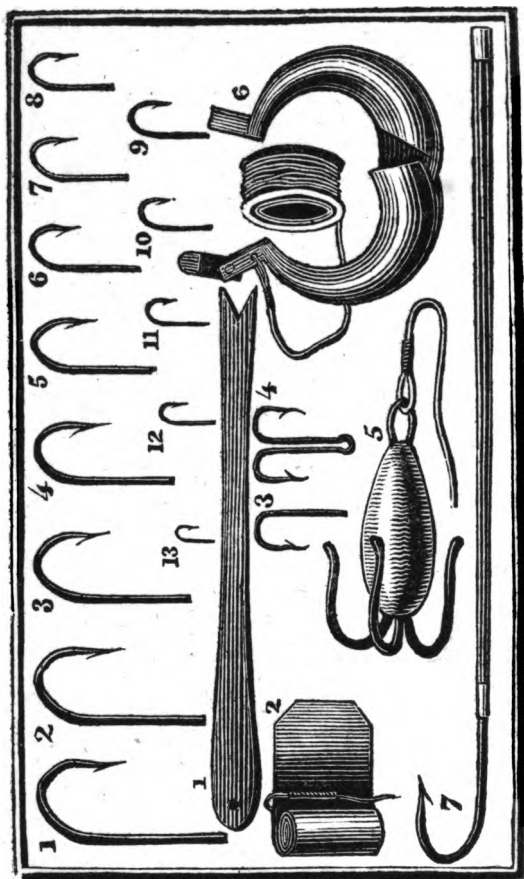
1. Multiplying winch.
2. Common winch.
3. Ledger line and hook.

4. Rod, line, and winch, for barbel, chub, &c.



# ANGLING APPARATUS—No. 3.

Hooks of all sizes, from No. 1 to 13.



- |                     |                    |                          |
|---------------------|--------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. Dragorger.       | 3. & 4. heel hook. | 6. Clearing ring & line. |
| 2. Folding plummet. | 5. Drag hooks.     | 7. Landing hook & rod.   |

THE  
*ANGLER'S GUIDE.*

---

*Angle.—A corner. A point where two lines meet.*

CHAP. I.

CHOICE OF TACKLE, &c.

**I**N the following treatise it is not my intention to take up much of my readers time by instructing them how to make fish-ponds, angle-rods, floats, or lines,\* conceiving that such descriptions tend only to perplex and

\* Although I do not recommend the novice in angling to attempt making his own tackle, until he knows how to use it; yet it is necessary he should be acquainted with the method of tying or whipping on a hook, and making a knot, in case of accident, when he is pursuing his sport: for which purpose, take the following directions—hold the hook between the thumb and finger of your left hand, and whip round the shank, from the bend of the hook to the top, some fine silk waxed with shoemaker's wax; then lay the hair or gut on it, and whip it over very close with the waxed silk, from the top of the shank till you come opposite the point of the hook; then draw the silk through the loop, which is made by leaving it three turns slack, and cut off the spare silk. The knot used in making lines is called a water-knot, which is tied by passing the ends twice over, and then drawing them tight: this knot will never draw nor slip. Any experienced angler, or the persons who keep tackle-shops, will show the young angler how to whip on a hook, or tie a knot in one minute, as well as in a year.

confuse the young angler; but shall direct him in the choice of every necessary article used in angling, which may at all times be purchased at the principal fishing-tackle shops in London, and most Cities and Towns in the Kingdom.

#### RODS.

The angle-rod is a material article in the angler's catalogue, therefore much care should be taken to procure a good one: the shops keep a great variety, made of bamboo, cane, hazel, hickory, &c. and of different lengths, some fitted as walking-canes, and others to pack in canvas bags; the latter are to be preferred, because you may have them of any length, and they are generally made more true, and are stronger: those made of bamboo-cane are best for general fishing,\* having several tops of various strengths; but the rods made of the white cane are much superior for fine fishing, particularly for Roach, being very light in weight, yet stiff. In choosing a rod, observe that it is perfectly straight when all the joints are put together, and that it gradually tapers from the butt to the top. In the choice of lines, take those that are round and even, whether made of gut or horse-hair: in respect to colour,

\* Rods for general fishing have several tops, some strong and fit for trolling; others for Barbel or Perch; and finer for Roach, &c. Rods fitted with several tops, all packing together, are certainly very convenient, when taking a distant journey; but the angler who wishes to have rods neat, and to be depended on, must keep one for trolling, another for Barbel, Perch, or other heavy fish; and also a fine light cane rod for Roach and small fish, as well as those for fly-fishing.

---

I think sorrel\* best for single horse-hair, either as a line or tied on a hook.

Floats for fine fishing should be made of quill; some are called tip-capped, which are best for Roach fishing; others have a plug at bottom, and are called plug-floats: several other kinds are used, made of quill and cork, called cork-floats, others of the porcupine quill, &c.

In purchasing a winch, give the preference to a multiplying one, as it enables you to lengthen or shorten your line with facility, by which means you much sooner kill your fish: those which tie on to the rod are better than those made with a ring or hoop, as they can be fastened on either large or small joints—not so with the ringed.

The following is a list of articles necessary for every one to possess, who intends perfecting himself in the delightful art of angling.

Rods for trolling, and bottom-fishing;

Lines of gut, hair, &c. (those of three yards long will be found most useful);

Floats of various sizes, to suit any water;

\* To die hair, gut, &c. a sorrel or brown colour, put two tea-spoonsful of powder of Peruvian Bark into a cup full of ale or porter, add a small piece of alum, into which put the gut or hair, and let the whole simmer or gently boil, about ten minutes, when the colour is given and will remain.

A



Hooks for trolling,—the gorge, snap, &c. tied on gyp ;

Hooks, tied on gut, of various sizes, to No. 12 ;

Hooks, tied on hair, from No. 11 to 13 ;

Winches for running tackle ;

Plummets for taking the depth ;

Baiting-needle ;

Disgorger ;

Clearing-ring ;

Drag ;

Split-shot ;

A pair of pliers, for putting shot on a line ;

Caps for floats ;

Landing-net ;

Kettle for carrying live bait ;

Gentle-boxes ;

Bags for worms ;

Fly-fishing rods, for whipping and dapping, or dabbing ;

Book or case of artificial flies, moths, &c. and materials for making the same.



---

---

## CHAP. II.

### FLOATS AND LINES.

It is of the first consequence that the angler should be acquainted with the float proper to be used for fishing in different waters, and for various kinds of fish ; as more depends on that part of his tackle than inexperienced or superficial observers imagine. I shall therefore request his attention while I point out those proper for the purpose.

#### THE TIP-CAPPED FLOAT.

This float is made of several pieces of quill, narrow at each end, gradually increasing in bulk or circumference to the middle: it is fastened to the line with a cap at each end. This float is superior to every other for angling in waters which are not very rapid ; particularly in Roach fishing, as the least movement or fine bite sinks it below the surface of the water ; the tip-capped float is also best for pond fishing for Carp and Tench, as it requires but few shot to sink it ; consequently disturbs the water but little when cast in, which is of the first consideration when angling for such shy or timid fish as Carp, Tench or Chub.

#### CORK FLOATS.

These floats are made of quills, with a piece of cork filed or ground smooth, and painted, which is burned or bored through the middle to admit the quill ; the bottom

is plugged with wood, and a ring to let the line pass through. These cork floats are well calculated to fish in heavy and rapid streams, as they require a great many shot to sink them; which weight of shot prevents the baited hook passing too quick over the bottom of the place where you may be fishing; for with a strong current or stream, and a light float, the baited hook goes over the place you have ground-bated before it reaches the bottom, consequently you lose the greatest chance of success from the float not sinking quick. Cork floats are made of various sizes and shapes: instead of common quills, some introduce the quill of the porcupine, which makes an excellent strong float.

#### PLUGGED FLOATS.

THESE kind of floats are the cheapest, and made of different quills, some of them with one goose-quill and a wooden plug at the bottom, from which they take their name: they are very apt to loosen, by the plug coming out. These floats suit the young angler, from their cheapness, and by being easily put on the line, having a cap at top and a ring at bottom; but the better informed angler objects to the ring at bottom, because it does not keep the line close to the float, and from the resistance or hinderance it makes in passing through the water, particularly when the fish bite fine; therefore he always uses the tip-capped float in ponds or rivers, where the stream will admit, in preference to every other.

---

To make the float stand upright in the water, some shot must be put on the line; they are kept ready split for the purpose at the tackle-shops: many small shot are better than a few large, because they disturb the water less in casting in or taking out the bait.—Note: never let more than a quarter of an inch of the float appear above the water.

#### LINES, &c.

FISHING-LINES are made of gut, twisted horse or cow's hair, and single horse-hair; those made of gut are the strongest, the twisted hair cheapest, and the single horse-hair the finest. The gut, or silk-worm gut, is made or manufactured from the intestines or gut of the silk-worm, and is the strongest substance (for its circumference) known by the angler, and makes a line superior to any thing else. The young angler will find a line of three yards in length the most useful, either to fish with or without a winch; as he must note that the line is unmanageable if longer than the rod. In shotting\* the line to sink the float, place them within two inches of the bottom loop of the line; to which loop fix the loop of the hair or gut that the hook is tied to, and always put one shot on the hair or gut, which will keep your bait down, and cause the whole to swim steady. The most expe-

\* When you place shot on the line, do it with a pair of pliers; which is the best and easiest method: some fasten them with their teeth, but it is a bad practice, for they often bite the hair or gut through, which causes much delay and vexation, particularly if it happens while you are fishing.

rienced anglers tie the line and the length which is fastened to the hook together, instead of using loops ; and it is much the best way, particularly with fine gut or hair.

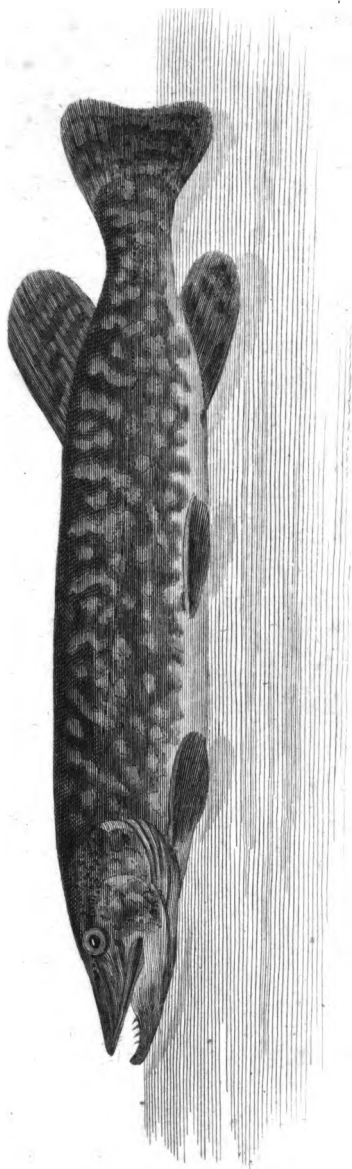
#### HOW TO FASTEN THE LINE TO THE ROD.

PASS the loop of your line through the ring at the extremity of the top joint of your rod, and carry it over the ferril end ; then draw your line up to the top again, the loop will then be fast to, and the line will hang from the ring at the extreme point of the rod ; you will then fasten this top joint to the other joints, and all is complete. Some anglers always keep about five inches of silk line tied to the top of their rod, and fasten the gut or hair line to it by a loop draw-knot: this is a good way, for sometimes the hair or gut is chafed with the ring. When you have a winch on the rod, and use running line, pass this line from the winch through every ring on your rod, and fasten it to the top of the line which has the float and hook on, by a loop draw knot. See plate No. 2, fig. 4.





# JACK.



C. Hardy, delin.

R. Carpenter, Sculp.

## CHAP. III.



TROLLING FOR JACK AND PIKE ; IN WHAT WATERS  
THEY ABOUND MOST, AND HOW TO TAKE THEM.

Pike—dread tyrant of the watery plain.

THE Jack and Pike,\* are well known to be the tyrants of rivers, lakes and ponds, but they afford the angler much amusement, sport, and exercise in trolling for them, and they are also held in much estimation at table, being considered as one of the best fish the fresh waters produce ; they are therefore sought after with the greatest avidity by the angler, and every art and stratagem is employed to take them : these I shall fully detail to my readers, but will first acquaint them where those fish are most abundant, and then proceed to take or kill *secundem artem*.

The rivers Thames and Lea probably breed a greater variety of fish than any other rivers in England, and, among the various species, a good store of Jack and Pike ; yet the angler will find but few places in the

\* Jack or Pike, names for this fish, which are generally used as synonymous among anglers ; but, properly speaking, a Jack becomes a Pike when weighing more than three pounds, or exceeding twenty-four inches in length.



Thames, within twenty miles of London, likely to reward him for his skill or assiduity in trolling; this is chiefly arising from the rapidity of the stream, and the few still holes or eddies to be met with on its banks. The places nearest to London where I have met with success, are from the meadows at Isleworth, proceeding to Richmond-bridge; thence to Twickenham, and again from the banks at Teddington to Hampton-wick; also at Hampton, Moulsey-hurst, at and near Esher, Walton, Sunbury, and on to Chertsey-bridge. During this route the troller may find likely places on both sides of the river.

The river Lea abounds with Jack and Pike; its numerous creeks, bends, pools, tumbling-bays, &c. give much security and harbour for fish; a great many parts of it also are secured from poachers, by being rented and preserved for the sole purpose of angling; these are called subscription waters, which the angler may use at his pleasure, by paying annually, a certain sum, in no case exceeding twenty-one shillings, or less than ten shillings and sixpence.

At a distance of less than three miles from the metropolis, begin between Old-ford and the White-house water near Temple-mills: always prefer trolling from the horse-path in this river during summer, in winter, the opposite side. The angler will find many excellent places for trolling in this river, which, for thirty miles up, is not generally more than thirty yards broad, enabling the experienced angler to fish its whole breadth

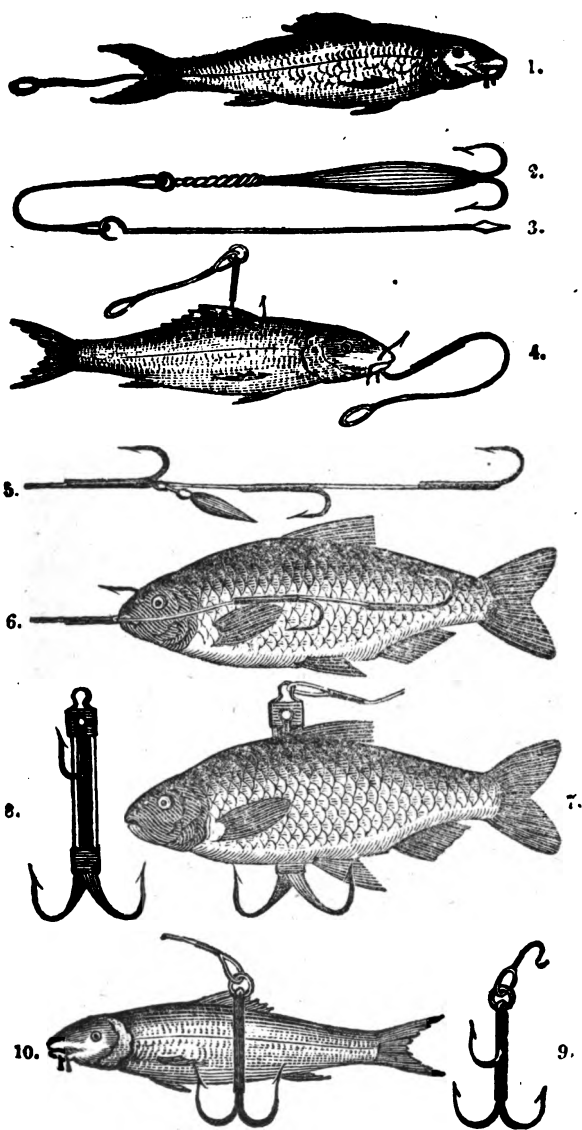
---

from one side, in many parts for a mile together, without interruption. The little navigable river Stort, which runs into the Lea near the Rye-house, Hoddesdon, contains many Jack and Pike. The river Roding in Essex, is well stored with fine Jack and Pike at Ongar ; and also at Abridge, Loughton, Woodford-bridge, and in several holes in the fields between Woodford-bridge and Red-bridge, at the back of Wanstead, and from thence to Ilford and Barking-creek. Nearly the whole of the water from Red-bridge to Ilford belongs to Wellesley Pole Tilney Long, Esq. who is very tenacious of all his manorial rights : it is therefore absolutely necessary that the angler should procure leave before he attempts to wet a line.

At Dagenham, in Essex, the large piece of water called Dagenham-breach, (which is preserved for the use of subscribers) has very large and numerous Jack and Pike. The Camberwell canal will repay the angler for trolling, as he will meet with some good Jack and Pike in it, particularly in that part of the canal which is broad and deep near the bridge or arch on the Kent-road, on the east side, all the way to Deptford Lower-road. The Croydon canal also boasts of some Jack, which may be trolled for from Deptford to Croydon, particularly in the still waters belonging to the numerous locks between New Cross, Kent-road, (to the east of Nunhead-hill,) and Sydenham. I have taken several Jack and Pike in the Paddington-canal : the best place is close to the first brick bridge from Paddington, on the

west side. Jack and Pike are also to be met with in the stream which runs near the Powder-mills on Hounslow-heath, and in several other waters near London ; but I have had the greatest success trolling in those rivers and canals above-mentioned.





#### HOOKS BAITED FOR TROLLING.

- |                             |                        |
|-----------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. Gorge hook baited.       | 6. The same baited.    |
| 2. Gorge hook and           | 7. Spring snap baited. |
| 3. Baiting needle.          | 8. Spring snap.        |
| 4. Hook with live bait.     | 9. Small Snap.         |
| 5. Dead snap, with 3 hooks. | 10. Small Snap baited. |



---

---

## CHAP. IV.

### TROLLING CONTINUED: NATURAL AND ARTIFICIAL BAITS, AND HOW TO BAIT THE HOOKS.

The natural baits for Jack and Pike are Roach, Dace, Gudgeon, Bleak, and Chub: about five or six inches in length will be found the best size, though some anglers use them considerably larger; but I have not found my account in trolling with a large bait: for by experience I have noticed the Jack or Pike to be sometimes shy of pouching, holding it across their mouths a considerable time, swimming backwards and forwards, and at last dropping it, while, on the contrary, they will generally pouch a small lively bait in a few minutes. Another advantage also often results from using a small bait; you may take a Trout, Perch, or Chub with it; the two latter are frequently taken when trolling for Jack or Pike, particularly if you have a live Gudgeon\* on your hook. The Roach, Dace, and Gudgeon, are decidedly the best baits for Jack or Pike; the Bleak may be used in thick water, because it is a very bright fish, but it is too thin to look well on the hook, and very soon looses its scales: small Chub and Perch, with the back fin cut off, are used when no better can be

\* Live Gudgeons may be purchased of Mr. ISAAC JACOBS, fishmonger, No. 30, Duke-Street, Houndsditch. I have seldom been disappointed of procuring them of him, even in the middle of winter. When the water is coloured, Roach show best, being a much brighter fish than a Gudgeon.

met with. The shops keep artificial baits for trolling, both of fish and frogs, made of wood, pearl, and also of leather stuffed and painted, and which, in form and colour, much resemble nature; but I should never think of using them while there was a possibility of getting a natural one: when they are used, it is with a snap, which I think shows judgment, for surely the most sanguine angler could hardly expect a Pike to pouch either wood, pearl, or leather, even with the addition of stuffing.

There are several methods practised in trolling and fishing for Jack and Pike, but the following are generally used, namely, with the gorge, the snap, the live bait, the bead-hook, and with a float; the comparative merits of each I shall clearly explain as we proceed farther in the art of trolling.

The gorge-hook is loaded on the shank with lead,\* and introduced into the body of the bait; the snap-hook, either spring or dead snap, consists of two or three hooks fastened together, (some use four as a dead snap) and are put on the bait without entering the body: the hooks used for live bait are single or double.

\* I generally take about half of the lead from the shank, as I have found when a Jack has struck my bait he has sometimes left it immediately, in consequence of his feeling the lead in the bait's body, which may be prevented by leaving that part only which lies in the throat of the bait, which will be found generally sufficient to sink it.

---

**GORGE-HOOK.**

To bait these hooks, observe the following directions : first, the gorge-hook.—Take a baiting-needle, and hook the curved end of it to the loop of the gymp, (to which the hook is tied) then introduce the point of the needle into the bait's mouth, (having first cut off the tail and all its fins which will keep it more steady on the hook) and bring it out at the tail-part ; the lead will then be hid in the bait's belly, and the points and barbs will lie in its mouth, the points turning upwards : to keep the bait steady on the hook, tie the tail-part to the gymp with some white thread. And also sew up the mouth to prevent the hook shifting, which it is apt to do from the point touching weeds, &c. The advantages arising from the use of the gorge-hook is principally from the hook lying so much within the bait's mouth, and the gymp coming from the tail, which prevents every obstruction to pouching ; for it is to be observed, that the Jack or Pike, in pouching, always swallows the bait head foremost.

**SPRING-SNAP.**

The spring-snap hook is baited by introducing the point of the upper or small hook under the skin of the bait on the side, and bringing it up to the back fin.

**DEAD-SNAP.**

The dead-snap is baited by the loop of the gymp being passed inside the gill of the bait, and brought out at



the nose; the lead lies in the throat, the first hook through the nose, and the others on its side, with the points just entered under the skin. Always sew this bait's mouth up with some white thread, to keep the leap and hooks in their places.

**SNAP WITH DOUBLE HOOK AND LIVE BAIT, OR MAY BE USED WITH DEAD-BAIT TO TROLL WITH.**

This snap-hook is a double hook, or two single hooks, (No. 6) tied back to back on gymp: to bait this snap, use the baiting-needle, having first placed the loop of gymp to which the hooks are tied in the eye or curved end of the needle; enter the point of the needle just above the gills of the fish, near the back, avoiding to pierce the flesh as much as possible, as it is only intended that the gymp should lie just behind the skin. Bring the needle and the loop of the gymp out near the tail, and draw till the hooks lie close to the part your needle entered, and are somewhat hid by the gills. The bait will live a long time after being thus hooked, and may be used in fishing with a float by putting three swan-shot on the gymp to keep it down:—always prefer a Gudgeon for this baiting. I call this a snap, because when fishing this way for Jack, I strike immediately I perceive a run, and have met great success this way of snap-fishing. The reader will perceive the hooks are baited same as for trimmer-angling. This snap may be baited with a dead fish and trolled with.

---

**SPEAR, OR BARB-HOOK.**

The shank of this hook is loaded with lead ; one end of it is like a dart or harpoon, the other end a single hook. Introduce the dart or barbed end, into the bait's mouth, and bring it out near the tail ; the lead is then in the bait's belly, and the hook just within its mouth, which must be sewed up with some white thread.

**LIVE-BAIT.**

The live bait is simply passing the hook through the bait's lips, or only through the upper lip, or the flesh beneath the back fin, taking care not to wound the back bone, or the bait will soon die.

**BEAD-HOOK.**

The bead-hook is formed of two single hooks tied back to back, or you may purchase them made of one piece of wire tied to gymp ; between the lower part of the shanks is fastened a small link or two of chains, having a piece of lead of a conical form, or like a drop-bead, (from which it takes its name,) linked by a staple to it: the lead is put into the live bait's mouth, (a Gudgeon is the best bait,) which is sewed up with white thread.

Fishing with this bait is called live-bait trolling ; for when you angle with a live bait, and have a float on the line, you wait some time in a place while the bait swims about, consequently not much ground is travelled over,

or length of water fished in a day, therefore not entitled to the name of trolling.

Trolling is derived from the French word *troller*, to stroll or rove about, which is the case frequently when angling with the gorge or snap, to the distance of eight or ten miles up a river and back again, trolling forwards and backwards, as you then carry the baits in your pocket; but in live-bait angling or trolling, you are encumbered with a fish-kettle.

#### LINES.

The lines for trolling are made of twisted silk, and silk twisted with hair or gut, &c. The plaited silk I prefer, finding, by experience, it is less likely to kink or tangle than any other line; it should be kept on the winch in length from thirty to forty yards at least. If you have sixty, you will find occasion sometimes to use it; and, according to the old adage, *better too much than too little*.

#### ROD.

The rod used in trolling must be very strong, from fourteen to twenty feet long, with a stiff whalebone or hickery top, with large fixed rings on it for the running-line to pass through. I find a rod made in the following manner very portable: let the butt be something more than a yard long, and of sufficient thickness to admit two stout joints, (without rings, the top made of hickery or whalebone, with two large rings on it) about eighteen inches in length, which I commonly carry in my inside

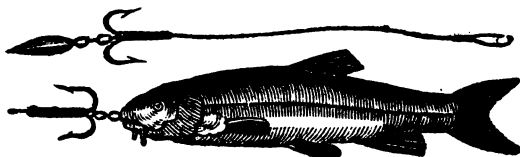
coat pocket, the other joints forming a good walking-cane, and with a bait or two in my pocket, I pass without any one suspecting that I am going on a fishing excursion: this rod when put together, will measure about fourteen feet, which I find generally long enough for trolling in any water.\* Some anglers troll without a rod, having their line on a winder, which they let out as occasion requires. They use a forked stick to hoist or lift their line over weeds, &c. and to cast in the bait. This method is by no means equal to trolling with a rod; it may answer to avoid being noticed. Others instead of putting a winch on their rods, carry the line on a winder in their left hand; but the best method is to have the line on a large multiplying winch, taking care always to keep it unlocked.

Having described the way to bait the hooks, &c. we will now repair to the river, and learn how to cast a

\* Some curious anglers have an ivory or pearl ring at the top of their trolling-rod, fearing that the brass may chafe the line: one gentleman I know has a small brass pulley on his top, such as is used by watch and clock makers. There is some difference among anglers about the number of rings necessary for trolling-rods; some have only one on the top, and carry their line on a winder in their hand; others use a winch fixed, and two rings on each joint. I consider the best method is to fix the winch on the butt, and let that and the next joint be without rings, and all the other joints to have one ring each: I have the rings made of double brass wire, and fixed on my rod, sufficiently large as nearly to admit my little finger; this prevents any obstruction to the line running free, which is very material with running tackle.

B

bait, and kill either Jack or Pike. At page 15 the reader will see the different modes of baiting hooks for trolling, and with the exception of the bead-hook, which is given below.



## CHAP. V.

TROLLING CONCLUDED ; HOW TO CAST THE BAIT, AND  
KILL JACK OR PIKE.

### TROLLING WITH THE GORGE HOOK.

I SHALL suppose the young angler to have arrived at the river-side with his rod and line, and a gorge-hook baited. First, fasten the winch to about the middle of the butt of your rod, draw the line through the rings to the length of eight or ten yards, and fasten the gymp and hook to the line with a small swivel ; place the bottom of the butt against the side of your stomach, draw some of the line back with your left hand, leaving as much from the top as will let the bait reach the winch, and lower the top of the rod near the ground—then, with a jerk from your right arm, cast the bait into the water : while giving the jerk, keep the butt firm against your stomach, but let the line, which you hold in the left hand loose. By a little practice, the young angler may be

---

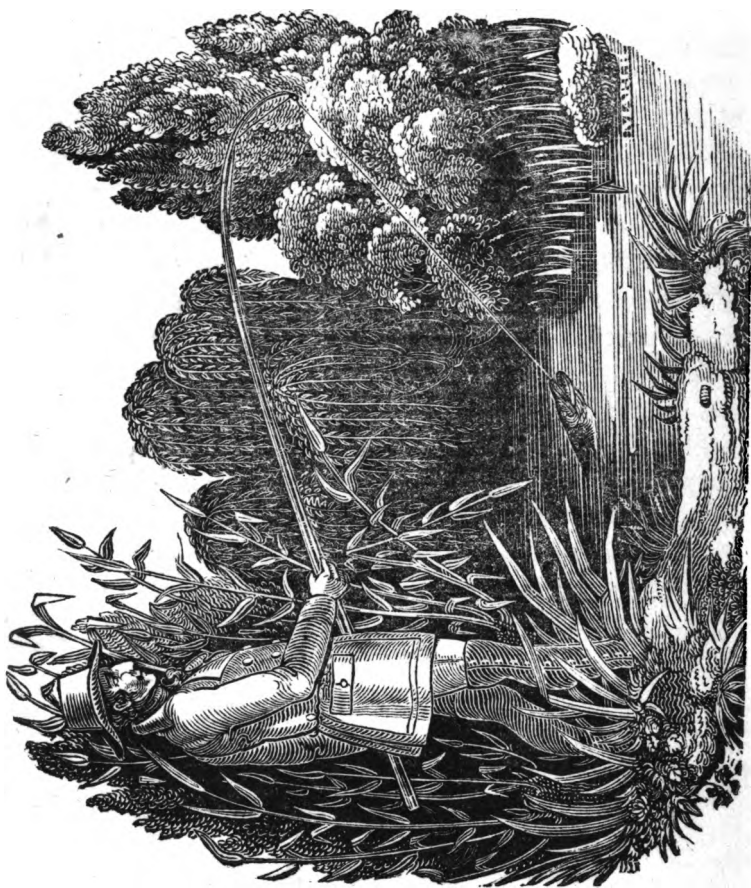
able to cast his bait to any distance ; but if the river or piece of water is not very large, or when you cast the bait near the bank or shore, it will then be only necessary to hold the rod in your hand instead of placing it against your stomach, holding the line in the other hand as before directed, you may with much ease cast or drop in your bait in search. (This method is generally called dipping.) Always prefer the side of the river, as being most free from weeds in summer ; in the winter, deeps and bends. When you cast in the bait, let it fall on the water as lightly as you can, that the fish may not be alarmed by the water being much agitated ; let it sink to the bottom, then gradually raise it nearly to the surface, permitting it to sink again ; after which, cast it further out, and drawing it gently towards you, cast it in again to the right and left, raising and sinking it slowly ; and so continue to troll till you feel a bite,\* which you will distinguish by perceiving a sudden catch or tug at your bait : always keep the line free, that nothing may impede the Jack or Pike in running away with the bait to his haunt ; for if he is the least

\* Never hastily take your bait out of the water, for Jack will often take it when passing close and slowly by them, the angler may, in the course of his experience, see Jack or Pike laying still, and many small fish swimming very near him, apparently without fear. In this case, I conceive the Jack has lately gorged himself, or may be a little indisposed or idle, and by drawing your bait near him and slowly, he possibly thinks the bait-fish wounded and likely to become an easy prey, and will then seize it. Such are my ideas, and in consequence, I troll very close every foot of water, and always gradually.

checked at first, he generally leaves the bait : let him remain quiet about ten minutes to pouch the bait, then wind up the slack line and strike ; but if you find a Jack or Pike run again, or shakes the line, after lying still five minutes, you may expect he has pouched the bait, and moves because he feels the hook in his stomach, in which case strike. If there be any very strong weeds, piles, or any thing else which may endanger your tackle near the place where you have hooked the fish, keep him from running to such places, by winding up your line, and drawing him gently to a level part of the bank, and get him on shore as soon as possible. The tackle used for trolling being very strong, I do not lose much time in playing Jack or Pike, at least in no comparison with what is necessary in killing Carp or Barbel : if you feel a bite, and the Jack or Pike soon stops, then runs again, and continues so to act two or three times within a few minutes, you may expect he is more on the play than the feed, therefore there is little chance of his pouching your bait ; in this case, it is advisable to strike, and you may be fortunate enough to hook the fish by some part and secure him. If this fails, try a snap-hook, by which practice I have frequently succeeded in securing a good fish when they would not pouch ; therefore, always carry various hooks, &c. with you.







· ANGLER KILLING A PIKE.

## LIVE-BAIT FISHING.

In fishing with a live-bait, I prefer a Gudgeon,\* in bright water, to any other bait, because it is a very strong fish, and lives longest on the hook ; it is certainly a favourite with Jack, Pike, Perch, and Chub : when so fishing, put a taper cork float (not very large) on your line, and a few swan-shot to sink it three parts under water ; cast your bait in search in the same way as directed with the gorge-hook, first adjusting the float on the line, so that the bait may swim something below mid-water, (occasionally let it sink quite to the bottom in cold weather, especially in eddies and holes, as the Jack lie low or deep,) and let it continue to swim about some minutes without taking it out, unless it comes too near the shore, or hangs in the weeds. When the Jack or Pike takes this live bait, he does it with much violence, and the float disappears instantly ; therefore be sure always to keep your winch unlocked, and line free ; a good angler never fishes with the winch locked : give the fish ten minutes to pouch, and then strike, if he remains quiet or still during that time ; but if he moves or runs again after the space of five minutes, he has most likely pouched the bait, therefore wind up the slack line and strike, as directed in page 22.

\* When the water is thick Roach certainly show best, being so much brighter than Gudgeon : as a bait, either at snap, live-bait fishing, or with the gorge hook.

In fishing with a live bait, the Jack and Pike will frequently take the bait, particularly in spring, and sail about, holding it across their mouths by the middle, but will not pouch it, I then put on a snap-hook, and strike the moment my float disappears. I have some acquaintances who never angle for Jack, Pike, or Perch, any other way than with a small snap-hook, (see plate of hooks baited for trolling,) and a light taper cork-float to their line, and they kill many heavy fish. When you fish with a snap-hook, either the spring or plain, you cast in search exactly as with the gorge; but when you feel a bite, strike quickly and hard that your hooks may get firm hold of the Jack or Pike.

In summer, when the rivers and other waters are much choaked with weeds, you may sometimes find a Jack in an opening, they then lie dozing near the surface: drop a baited snap-hook in such place, and let it sink a few inches, and it is very probable he will take it; in this case, your line should be very strong as well as the rod, for you must strike and lift the fish out instantly, or you lose both Jack and hook among the weeds.

In trolling with the bead-hook, cast in the bait, as before directed, with the gorge, &c.; the lead in its mouth will cause it to sink gradually, but will not prevent its swimming about for some time; angling with this bait is called live-bait trolling. When at the bottom, you must raise it near to the surface again, and

---

occasionally take it out and cast in a fresh place, either to the right, left, or opposite, taking care to fish every yard of water where the place is likely to yield a Jack or Pike; for it sometimes happens that they are not much inclined to move, but will readily take a bait if it swims within their reach. When you feel a bite, let him run, and allow him ten minutes time for pouching before you strike, provided he remains quiet, if not, act the same as with the gorge-hook.

Various other ways are practised for taking Jack, Pike, and Perch, by night-lines, trimmers, &c.\* (for further information see trimmer angling, but such methods are justly reprobated by the true angler, who exercises his skill and art for amusement more than profit. By those night lines and trimmers, many of the largest Pike and Perch are killed. The trimmers most used in pools, ponds, and still waters, are thrown in baited, and frequently left all night, and are taken up from a boat: if the place is not too broad, you may get them with your drag. These trimmers are made of strong thin cord, with a hook tied to gymp, and wound on a piece of flat cork, about five inches in

\* Jack and Pike are taken sometimes at night in ponds and still waters, by baiting a hook with a lively yellow frog; to do which, put the gymp in the frog's mouth, and draw it out at the gills, leaving the hook nearly covered in its mouth, and having tied a hind leg to the gymp, fasten it to the line in the same manner as any other bait for Jack and Pike; but any small fish are much superior bait to frogs, which I never use by chance.

diameter, with a groove to admit the line ; the hook is baited with a Gudgeon, Roach, or some small fish : you then draw as much line out as admits the bait to hang about a foot from the bottom. There is a small slit in the cork, that you pass the line in, to prevent it unwinding ; as soon as the Jack or Pike seizes the bait, the line loosens, and runs from the groove of the cork free, and allows the fish to retire to his haunt, and pouch at leisure. These trimmers are named, by many, the *man-of-war* trimmers. Col. Thornton, during a sporting tour to the Highlands of Scotland, took a Pike weighing upwards of forty-nine pounds ! the largest I ever heard of. This Pike I believe, was taken by trolling with a gorge-hook, some say with a trimmer.

#### THE BANK-RUNNER, TRIMMER, &c.

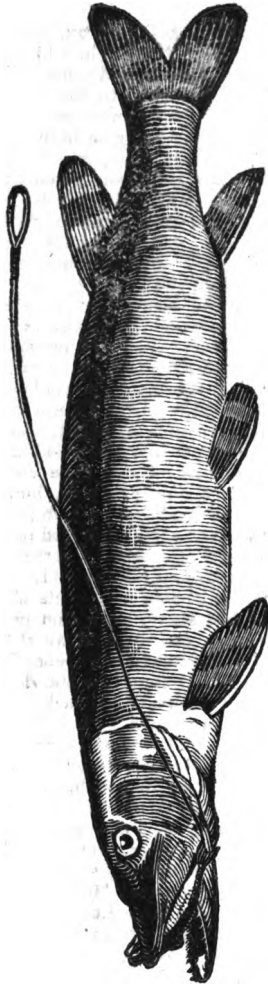
The bank-runner is used in the day, while the angler is fishing for Roach, Barbel, &c.\* and are much better than a ledger, being less in sight. These trimmers are stuck in the bank, having strong turned

\* Although I object to laying trimmers, yet I think, in case the angler is disturbed by a Jack, Pike or Perch, (which frequently happens in some waters,) while Roach fishing, &c. it is quite fair to put in a trimmer to take the disturber off his sport. Put a cork on the line, within a foot of the bottom, having first run the line through a bored bullet, then fasten a hook, or hooks, baited as directed in page 15, called the snap with double hook. The bank-runner is the most proper for thus laying a trimmer, which should be cast in a place clear from weeds ; the lead and float, or cork, will keep the bait in its place, and it will live on the hook many hours.—This is the most killing way of laying a trimmer for Jack, Pike, Eels, &c.

## COLONEL THORNTON'S Account of taking an extraordinary large PIKE.

---

I SAW, says COLONEL THORNTON, a very large fish come at me, and, collecting my line, I felt I had him fairly hooked; but I feared he had run himself tight round some root, his weight seemed so dead: we rowed up, therefore, to the spot, when he soon convinced me he was at liberty, by running me so far into the Lake, that I had not one inch of line more to give him. The servants, foreseeing the consequences of my situation, rowed, with great expedition, towards the fish, which now rose about seventy yards from us, an absolute wonder! I relied on my tackle, which I knew was in every respect excellent, as I had, in consequence of the large *Pike*, killed the day before, put on hooks, and gimp, adjusted with great care; a precaution which would have been thought superfluous in London, as it certainly was for most Lakes, though, here, barely equal to my fish. After playing him for some time, I gave the rod to CAPTAIN WALLER, that he might have the honour of landing him; for I thought him quite exhausted, when, to our surprise, we were again constrained to follow the monster nearly across this great Lake, having the wind too much against us. The whole party were now in high blood, and the delightful Ville-de-Paris quite manageable; frequently he flew out of the water to such a height, that though I knew the uncommon strength of my tackle, I dreaded losing such an extraordinary fish, and the anxiety of our little crew was equal to mine. After about an hour and a quarter's play, however, we thought we might safely attempt to land him, which was done in the following manner: *Newmarket*, a lad so called from the place of his nativity, who had now come to assist, I ordered, with another servant, to strip, and wade in as far as possible; which they readily did. In the mean time I took the landing-net, while CAPTAIN WALLER, judiciously ascending the hill above, drew him gently towards us. He approached the shore very quietly, and we thought him quite safe, when seeing himself surrounded by his enemies, he in an instant, made a last desperate effort, shot into the deep again, and, in the exertion, threw one of the men on his back. His immense size was now very apparent; we proceeded with all due caution, and, being once more drawn towards land, I tried to get his head into the net; upon effecting which, the servants were ordered to seize his tail, and slide him on shore: I took all imaginable pains to accomplish this, but in vain, and began to think myself strangely awkward, when, at length, having got his *mout* in, I discovered that the hoop of the net, though adapted to very large *Pike*, would admit no more than that part. He was, however, completely spent, and, in a few moments, we landed him, a perfect monster! He was stabbed by my directions in the spinal marrow, with a large knife, which appeared to be the most humane manner of killing him, and I then ordered all the signals with the *sky-scrapers* to be hoisted; and the whoop re-echoed through the whole range of the Grampians. On opening his jaws, to endeavour to take the hooks from him, which were both fast in his gorge, so dreadful a forest of teeth, or tushes, I think I never beheld: if I had not had a double link of gimp, with two swivels, the depth between his stomach and mouth would have made the former quite useless. His measurement, accurately taken, was *five feet four inches*, from Eye to Fork.



**PIKE TAKING A BAIT.**

wood sharpened for the purpose, with a winder at top for the line, which is fitted in the same manner as the man-of-war, but you must have a small cork-float to the line, (the cork used for a quart bottle does very well) and bait with a live fish, which should swim about a foot from the ground. These kind of trimmers and night-lines are kept ready fitted at the fishing-tackle shops. There is yet another method of taking Jack and Pike, called cross fishing or trolling, for which see trimmer angling.

#### SNARING, &c. OF JACK AND PIKE.

In the summer, during very sultry weather, Jack and Pike will lie dozing near the surface of the water, especially in ponds, they are then taken in an unsportmanlike manner, by making a running noose of twisted gut or brass wire, fastened to a strong line and rod, which should be carefully drawn over the fish's head beyond the gills, then with a strong jerk he is securely caught: lift him out immediately. Fish may be taken when found lying in a similar manner to that already described, by putting two or three strong hooks at the bottom of your line, and letting them sink under the fish, then strike smartly, and you will be generally successful.

#### OBSERVATIONS ON TROLLING, &c. FOR JACK AND PIKE.

Having enumerated many different methods of trolling, &c. for Jack and Pike, I shall now proceed to



give an opinion on the merits of each different way, resulting from my own experience, and the practice of many old friends and brothers of the angle.

#### GORGE-HOOK.

With the gorge-hook baited I have had the most success in trolling, and with it killed the heaviest fish. This bait shows well in the water, and turns and spins better than any other when you are in the act of drawing it up, consequently very attracting to the Pike. This bait also possesses another advantage over any other, namely, the closeness of the hooks in the bait's mouth, the points only just showing themselves, which is material in bright water, and also less liable to catch hold of weeds, or any thing else that might displace the hooks or disfigure the bait ;—and again, the hooks being so much hid and out of the way, by being within the bait's mouth, and the gimp coming from the tail, there is nothing to check the Jack or Pike when they are changing the bait to pouch ; for it is well known that those fish always seize the bait, in the first instance, across its body, (as represented in the plate,) afterwards changing its position, and swallow or pouch it, head foremost ; consequently, while so doing, the gimp and hooks in other baits are liable to offend, or create fear or suspicion in the fish, and the bait is then frequently thrown out, instead of being pouched. Some anglers think that cutting off all the fins of the fish disfigures it, but it certainly is the best method, particularly as it keeps the bait from catching or hanging on weeds.

---

**SNAP-HOOKS.**

The next best way of trolling is with the snap; I prefer the snap with two hooks to the spring-snap, principally from the hooks lying along the bait, and being more hid than with the spring, and also from their not presenting any obstruction to the Jack or Pike when they first strike the bait, which the spring-snap does by lying in the part where the fish strikes its prey, namely, the middle.

**BEAD-HOOK.**

I have never considered trolling with the bead-hook to be a good method; though the bait will keep alive some time on it, yet the obstruction of the hooks, chain, and gimp at its mouth make the fish shy of taking or pouching it; and, from the hook's being so much exposed and bare, they frequently catch on weeds, &c.

**SPEAR OR BARB-HOOK.**

The spear or barb-hook has nearly all the disadvantages of the bead-hook, therefore subject to the same objections; indeed it has but seldom been used of late years, by any persons whom I have met with.

**TROLLING WITH A DEAD BAIT, AS A SNAP.**

I have met with success in trolling with a dead-bait put on a double hook, without lead, as directed in page 16, but it has been in ponds, and still holes near the sides in rivers; for a hook so baited will not bear to be cast far, or with violence, as in that case the bait-

fish is soon disfigured by the hooks breaking the skin. When you feel a bite let it run a few feet, then strike smartly.

#### FISHING WITH A LIVE BAIT AND A FLOAT.

Fishing for Jack and Pike with a live bait and a cork on the line, is certainly an enticing way, but I do not consider it so successful as trolling with the gorge hook, neither have I ever killed such good fish by this method of live-bait fishing as with the gorge-bait ; yet I know, from practice, that more Jack and Pike may be killed by angling for them with a live-bait on the hook, and cork-float on the line, than any other way, except trolling with the gorge-hook ; and the little labour or exertion required to take Jack and Pike by this mode of fishing is, doubtless the cause of many preferring it, as it allows them frequent opportunities of resting when they reach a clear place, either in rivers or ponds, with the pleasure of observing their float dance about by the live-bait sailing too and fro, which must, and does, have the effect of drawing the Jack or Pike ; but they often throw it out of their mouths again, from the gymp or hook touching them when shifting the bait to pouch it, which makes me prefer trolling with the gorge-hook to any other way of fishing for Jack or Pike. When the water is very bright, I use a strong No. 6 hook, baited with a small live Gudgeon, tied to twisted gut, instead of gymp, and a very small cork-float, with which I kill many Jack and Perch that would not be taken with stronger tackle in fine water, or in shallows.

---

Trolling has advantages over other modes of angling, for when the weather is boisterous and cold, you may take Jack and Pike, while other fish refuse every enticement ; it is also highly conducive to health by the exercise which it affords.

The season for trolling commences in July, and ends with February, (but few good fish are taken till after Michaelmas,) in March the Jack and Pike are full of spawn : though they will then certainly take a bait very freely, during March and often in April, yet the true sportsman will not then take them.

The Jack and Pike bite most freely during a breeze of wind, and will feed all day, but best in the morning and the forenoon : I have seldom met with much sport after two o'clock, except in the very depth of winter. From Michaelmas to February is the best season. For Jack fishing during winter, fish close to the banks and sags, weeds, &c. and also while the water is thick.

When you intend to use live-baits, take at least six in your fish-kettle, and give them fresh water during your perambulation : if you mean to use the gorge, bait three hooks before you begin, and keep them in bran, in a gentle-box, or something large enough for the baits to lie at their length. Always use fresh and lively baits, for though Jack and Pike are tyrants and gluttons, they are also epicures.

## OBSERVATIONS ON PIKE.

Pike have a flat head, the under jaw longer than the upper, giving the whole appearance of the head and mouth a great resemblance to that of a duck or goose. The body is long, and cased in small hard scales, and generally covered with a mucus or slimy substance; the back and sides are of a greenish gold hue, the eyes are also of a gold colour, and sunk low in the sockets: after they fully recover from spawning, which is in July, (they spawn generally in March and April) they then have several beautiful spots on their bodies; their gills are a fine red, and their tails and fins have dusky spots and waved lines; the mouth is extremely large, wide, and full of teeth, the lower jaw is studded round with large crooked teeth, but none on the upper: this expanse of mouth, jaws, and teeth, enables the Pike to hold fast, and quickly destroy the victim that is so unfortunate as to come within their reach, by which means they, in some degree, satisfy their voracious and ever-craving appetites. The Pike is also as bold as he is voracious, attacking all kinds of fish, except Tench, (of which I shall speak more fully when treating on that fish,) and when much distressed with hunger, will seize the smaller of their own species; as also on ducks, water-rats, frogs, and almost any animal they can meet with.

---

From their bold and ravenous nature, I believe the story which Gesner\* relates, of an enormous Pike seizing his mule by the nose while drinking in a lake in Germany. I have known instances of Jack and Pike entirely destroying every fish in a pond, and then making a prey of each other, until there has been but one left.† When much on the feed, they will seize the fish on the angler's hook as he is lifting it out of the water, leaping a foot above the surface for that purpose, and sometimes they will swallow the leaden plummet, while the angler is plumbing the depth ; small Jack will take a worm. The large Perch seem the least afraid of the Jack and Pike, as they will continue to swim about the same place when the tyrant appears, while the other fish swim away with the greatest velocity. The back fin of the Perch is certainly a weapon with which they can defend themselves, and inflict most severe wounds on the Pike. Eels avoid the Pike by suddenly burying themselves in the mud at its approach.

\* Gesner (Conrad) an eminent scholar, physician and philosopher, was born at Urich in Switzerland, in 1516, and died at the same place in 1565. From his great attainments, and the extent of his learning, he was named, by way of distinction, the German Pliny.

† On the 6th of August, 1814, as Sir Edward Hitchens, of Oxford, was fishing in a boat on the lake at Blenheim, he perceived an enormous Pike pursue and seize another of a considerable size ; the boatman drove the assailant away with his boat-pole, but the smaller one was so much injured by the biting of the larger, that he almost immediately died. Sir Edward took him, and found his weight, exceeded five pounds ; and from the appearance of the large Pike, supposes he must have weighed upwards of thirty pounds.

A friend of mine, Mr. Robinson, took a Pike out of the river Lea in the following manner:—He had baited a trimmer with a Stone-loach, and laid it near the place where he was angling for Roach, (finding his sport much disturbed by a Jack or Pike,) when he took up his trimmer he found a Pike fast to it; and on looking into the fish's mouth, he discovered a Perch about half a pound weight: when the Pike was opened, it was observed that the Perch had swallowed the Loach, and afterwards the Pike had seized the Perch; and while in the act of swallowing or pouching it, the Perch's back fins had stuck so firmly in the lower part of the Pike's mouth and throat as completely to hook or hold him, and in this state Mr. R. took them to town to gratify several brothers of the angle. Yet small Perch, with the fins cut off, are a good bait for Jack or Pike. The Pike lives to a considerable age, and grows to an amazing size, some say to the weight of fifty pounds! They are also wonderfully prolific, producing upwards of ten thousand eggs in one roe. Jack and Pike are fond of quiet places, at or near the ends of scowers, in still holes, near beds of weeds, in deep pools, in bends, and near flood-gates, and in the summer, near the land-dock and pickerell weeds, on which they feed, and also near or among bull-rushes, sedges, &c. In the spring they get more in eddies, and at the end or shallow part of pools, and to those parts of rivers, canals, lakes, or ponds, where ditches or small streams empty themselves, to which places they are drawn in search of frogs, and to deposit their spawn, and are then much thinned by the machinations of the

---

poacher. The Jack and Pike also leave the large rivers when the water is thick, and get into the creeks and ditches: they are a solitary fish, seldom seen two together.

Of the unbounded voracity of the Pike, the following instance may be given, copied from a London Newspaper in the year 1765:

“About ten days ago a large Pike was caught in the river Ouse, which weighed upwards of twenty-eight pounds, and was sold to a gentleman in the neighbourhood for a guinea. On the cook's opening it she found a watch, with a black ribband and two seals, in the stomach of the fish, which proved to have been the property of a livery servant that was drowned near the place about six weeks before. The watch was kept for the inspection of the curious, at the Cross Keys at Littleport.”

It is a well-known fact, that in Lord Gower's canal, at Trentham in Staffordshire, a Pike of a very large size seized the head of a swan while under water, and gorged it, which was the death of both. In short, there is no account of any fish, of the same size, equal to the Pike in voracity.



## CHAP. VI.

### GROUND-BAITS OF VARIOUS KINDS, AND HOW TO MAKE AND USE THEM.

GROUND-BAITING is but little practised by inexperienced anglers ; it is also sometimes neglected by the more experienced, from the hurry to begin their sport, or the dislike of the trouble of preparing it : let the neglect arise from what cause it may, little success will attend their efforts in bottom or float-fishing without it, for ground-baiting is an essential in angling. I shall therefore give ample directions how to make and apply every kind useful to promote the angler's sport, as it is necessary that he should first be acquainted with the means of drawing the fish together, before he attempts to take them.

#### GROUND-BAIT FOR ROACH, DACE, AND BLEAK.

The most simple ground-bait is made by moulding or working some clay, (which is generally met with in the banks of rivers) and bran together, into balls or pieces about the size of a pigeon's egg : some add a little bread crumbled among it. This is good ground-bait for Roach and Dace : if you fish in a stream, always put a small stone in each piece before you cast into the water to prevent it from drifting away.

---

**GROUND-BAIT MADE OF BREAD, BRAN, POLLARD, &c.  
FOR CHUB, CARP, ROACH, AND DACE.**

For a day's angling, half a quartern loaf is necessary, the crust of which you will cut off, the crumb to be cut in slices about two inches thick, and put into a pan, or some deep vessel, and covered with water; when the bread is quite soaked or saturated, squeeze it nearly dry, then add the bran and pollard by handfuls, equal quantities of each, and kneed them together, similar to making bread, until the whole is nearly as stiff as clay: in making this ground-bait, it requires some labour and time, but it will amply repay you for the trouble, as it is the best and cleanest ground-bait for Carp, Chub, Roach, and Dace. When I use it for Barbel, in the river Lea, I first break about a quarter of a pound of greaves with a hammer, almost to dust, and soak it well in water, then work it up with the bread, bran, and pollard. In using this bait, you avoid the dirty use of clay, and can also prepare it before you leave home: an equally good bait may be made by substituting barley-meal for the bran and pollard. This should only be used in still water, as, from its lightness, it would be carried away in a rapid stream.

**GROUND-BAIT MADE WITH CLAY, BRAN, AND GENTLES, FOR CHUB, ROACH, AND CARP.**

Mix the bran and clay together in lumps about the size of an apple, put a dozen or more gentles in the middle, and close the clay over them similar to making

a dumpling ; this ground-bait is very enticing to Carp, Chub, Roach and Dace ; it is particularly well calculated for baiting in a pond, a still hole, or gentle eddy, because the clay lies at the bottom, and the gentles gradually work through it, which keeps the fish about the hook, and they doubtless mistake your bait on it for what may have escaped from the lump. Some put worms instead of gentles, leaving some part of the body outside the clay.

**GROUND-BAIT MADE WITH CLAY AND GRAVES, FOR BARBEL.**

According to the strength of the stream proportion the size of the lumps or balls you cast into the water ; in the river Thames, when fishing for Barbel in a punt, the balls must be as large as a turnip, or the current washes them from the places you intend enticing the fish to ; in the river Lea, pieces of half the size will do. To make this ground-bait, chop or break a pound of greaves into smaller pieces, and cover it with hot water ; let it remain until it softens, then pour the water from it and pick out a sufficient quantity of the white pieces to bait your hook, and work up the remainder with clay into lumps or balls ; I always add bran to it. This is the best ground-bait for Barbel that is used ; it is a considerable time before it parts or dissolves, and keeps the fish to the spot, who rout and push it about with their noses, and occasionally loosen small pieces of the greaves, of which they are immoderately fond : it is also an excellent bait for Chub, large Dace, and heavy Roach will also feed on greaves.

---

**GENTLES AND WORMS USED AS GROUND-BAIT FOR  
CARP, TENCH, ROACH, DACE, &c.**

In ponds and in deep still holes gentles may be thrown in by handfuls, to entice fish ; but it does not answer in a current or stream, as they then float, and are carried from the spot you intend to angle in : a few mixed with bran and clay will answer better than handfuls without.

If you intend using gentles alone for ground-bait, it will be necessary to take a quart for a day's fishing : gentles for this purpose are called carrion gentles, and are sold at fourpence and sixpence per quart, by Mrs. Embry, fishing-tackle maker, Union-Street, Bishops-gate-Street, Mr. Webster, Grub-Street, and Mr. Rastall, No. 8, Sleep's Alley, at the top of St. John's-Street, Clerkenwell, and other places. Worms cut in pieces may be used with the same precaution, in respect to the stream, for ground-bait ; if mixed with bran and clay it will be better.

Grains are good ground-bait for Carp, Tench, and Eels, in ponds or still waters ; but they must be quite fresh, for if they are the least sour, the fish will not come near them. This ground-bait should be thrown in the night before you intend to fish ; the same method should be observed when you ground-bait with worms : coarse ground-bait may be made with clay, soaked greaves, and oat-chaff ; some anglers prefer this to any other for Barbel and Chub.

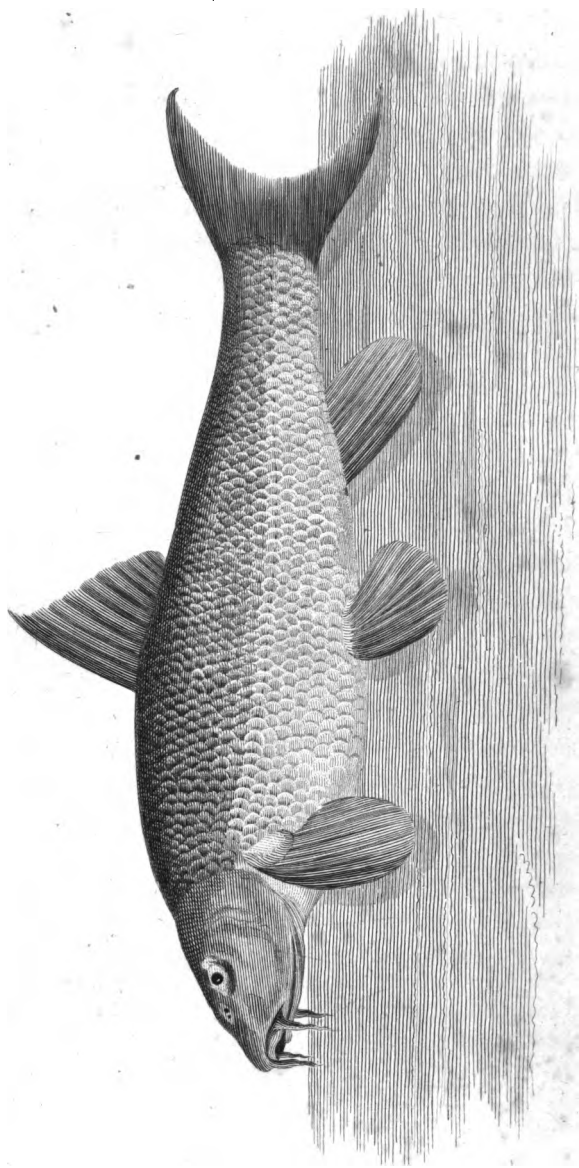
**OBSERVATIONS ON GROUND-BAIT.**

It is chiefly by the judicious use of ground-bait, and fishing at a proper depth, that one angler is more successful than another, although fishing with the same baits, &c. and within a few yards of each other; of this I am fully convinced by experience. Ground-bait should not be used the second day after it is made, as it will be sour; and the fish will certainly avoid it, as every thing partaking of acidity is extremely offensive to the whole finny tribe.





# BARBEL.

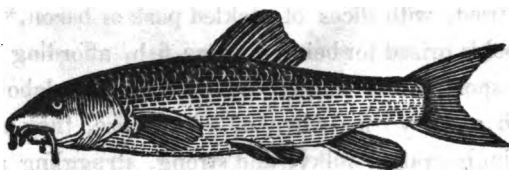


C. Hardy delin.

R. Carpenter Sculp.

## CHAP. VII.

## BOTTOM, OR FLOAT-FISHING.

DIRECTIONS HOW TO ANGLE FOR AND TAKE THE  
BARBUS OR BARBEL.

———— With hurried steps  
The anxious angler paces on, nor looks aside,  
Lest some brother of the angle, ere he arrives,  
Possess his favourite swim.\*

THE Barbel derives its name from the barbs or wattles at his mouth, which are four in number: they are a gregarious and leather-mouthed fish. Barbel only breed and thrive in rivers. In the Thames and part of the river Lea there are many, very fine and large; where I have known them taken weighing nineteen pounds; they are a very handsome fish, but their

\* The partiality for a particular swim, hole, or eddy, in a river, is very great among anglers; many will travel during the night to arrive first at a favourite place. I knew an angler who frequently, in summer, left London in the evening, and stopped at a village public-house near the river Lea, take his supper and pipe, and there remain until the people of the house retired to bed, then walk to his favourite swim, and sit down and wait patiently till the dawn of day enabled him to use his angle rod.

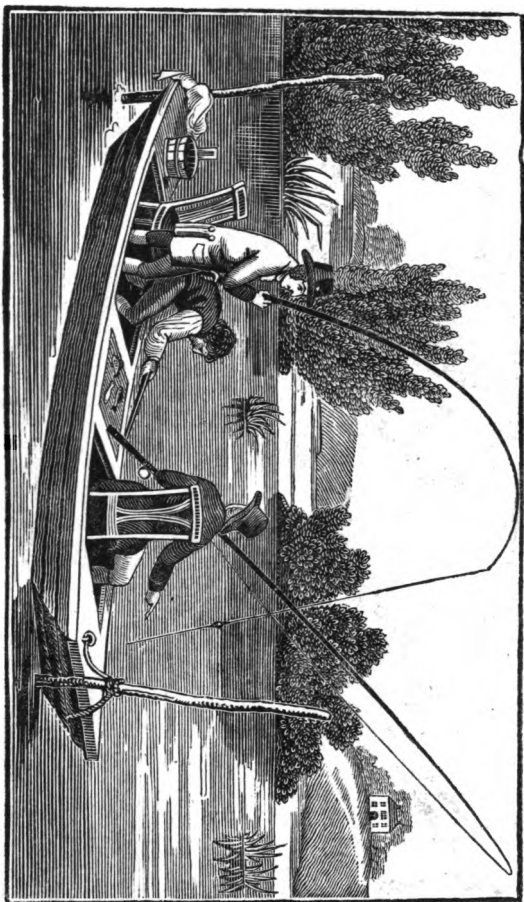


flesh is coarse, and therefore considered but of little value for the table ; yet I am told, by several persons, that they eat very well, especially when baked, with veal stuffing in their belly, as do the smaller ones split and fried, with slices of pickled pork or bacon.\* The Barbel is prized for being a game fish, affording excellent sport to the angler, mixed with some labour and much anxiety : for when of a large size, they are exceedingly crafty, sulky, and strong, struggling a long time after they are hooked, often lying motionless at the bottom for many minutes, then running under banks, or shelves, into large beds of weeds, in fact, trying every possible way to get off the hook, or break your line, which they certainly will effect if you are deficient in skill, or your tackle is in any respect faulty. If they get under a shelf as soon as they are hooked, do not pull too strong ; but rather give line, and they generally come out ; then keep them, if possible, from getting in again.

They are usually angled for on the river Thames in boats, called punts, with a stout rod, running tackle, gut line, cork float, and No. 7 or 8 hook ; likewise with the ledger line,† which is fitted in the following manner :

\* The spawn of Barbel is not fit for food, as it generally acts as a strong cathartic, and frequently as an emetic.

† Sir JOHN HAWKINS considers Barbel fishing very dull sport, and in support of such opinion, gives an anecdote (in his edition of Walton) of a gentleman living at Shepperton, who was daily fishing for Barbel, and during a month's fishing, had not taken a fish ; or even had



**PUNT-FISHING.**



---

a short solid rod running tackle without a float, with hook No. 6 or 7 tied on twisted gut, baited with two marsh worms, or with greaves. About ten inches above the hook is placed a piece of flat lead, perforated, (sold at the shops) below which is fixed a large shot to prevent the lead slipping down: the bait is then cast in, and lies clear on the ground; hold the top of your rod over the side of the boat, nearly touching the water, you will feel a bite, (keep the line free) and at the second tug strike hard; but most good anglers prefer using a strong gut line and No. 8 or 9 hook, with a float. Killing a Barbel with this tackle, affords greater sport, and you also frequently catch large Roach and Dace, while thus trying for Barbel. Mr. Champion, of Bishopsgate-street, caught two Barbel in August last, near the White-house, in the Lea, weighing near twelve pounds each, with a No. 10 hook.

a bite. This certainly was very dull sport; allowance, however, should be made for the want of skill in this patient piscator; for he had been at sea all his life, and consequently, from want of experience, was not able to judge of the fitness of tackle, &c.; and, in all probability, this sea captain used a coarse ledger line, and only fished in the middle of hot days, in very bright water, and on the shallows; in no other way can I account for such signal ill luck. In year 1808, I was at Shepperton, and was told by HENRY PERDUE, the boatman, that in the month of August the year before, four gentlemen, in two boats, killed eighty-seven Barbel and Roach, in about six hours fishing, some of them weighing upwards of nine pounds, and the whole eighty-seven weighed nearly one hundred and fifty pounds. This feat is well known at Shepperton, and was celebrated in verse by my friend Mr. CRACKNELL.

In the river Lea you fish with much finer tackle: your rod either of bamboo or cane, with a stiff top, running tackle, fine gut line, quill float, and No. 9 or 10 hook; baits, red worms, gentles, and greaves. They will sometimes take paste. The bait must always touch, and in strong streams, or thick water, drag two or three inches on the ground. Greaves are certainly the most killing bait; but when I fish for Barbel, I always take the three baits with me, alternately putting worms and gentles, or greaves and a worm, on the hook together, as they sometimes want much enticing.—Never omit trying a worm in the evening: they will take red worms in the autumn and in spring, till June, in preference to any other bait. When the water is coloured or thick, put two on the hook in the following manner:—enter the point of your hook in the first worm, near the head, and draw it up the shank, then enter the other near the tail, and carry the point downwards, then draw the first down, to cover the whole bend of the hook, and cast in. Some anglers bring the tail of the worm to the point of the hook, thinking the worm appears more tempting by being so placed. I believe one way answers as well as the other; when the water is coloured in summer, you may use a double hook, No. 10. Purchase those that are brazed together, and bait with greaves.

The Barbel bites very sharp and sudden, therefore you must strike immediately you perceive it, and raise the top of your rod a little, permitting him to run some considerable distance before you attempt to turn or check him; then endeavour to keep your fish away

---

from the shelves and beds of weeds, take him from the current into deep and still water as soon as possible, and play him till he has quite lost his strength before you attempt to land him, which will sometimes occupy near half an hour if a very heavy fish, and you are fishing with a gut-line and float: this makes Barbel-fishing so pleasant to a good angler.

Before you begin to angle for Barbel, throw in plenty of ground-bait, (you can hardly give them too much,) and continue to do so frequently while fishing for them. The best ground-bait is made with soaked graves and clay mixed together, (as directed in page 38,) also clay and gentles: indent a piece of clay, in which put some gentles, close it slightly, and the gentles will work out gradually when at the bottom of the river.—Use this last-named bait only in still holes, for if in a current, the gentles are carried away, and the fish follow. A quantity of worms, if they can be procured, chopped into small pieces, mixed with clay and bran, are likewise good ground-bait, especially if thrown in the night before.

The Barbel feed from March till November, all the day, but best in the morning and evening: (during March, April, May, and part of June, fish for them in strong currents and on the scowers;) indeed, the chance of success increases with the coming night.\*

\* I am acquainted with a very ingenious angler who fishes an hour or more later than others for Barbel, Carp and Roach, which he is enabled to do by putting a piece of white feather, or a piece of cork, about the size of a marble; in this he inserts a small piece of wire, paints the cork white. and sticks it in the top of his float, by which

They will even bite all night, and will feed very freely after rain, when the water is thickened a little.

Barbel are frequently caught foul, that is, hooked without their biting; for when they are swimming about the ground-bait, their fins, body, or tail often strikes against the lower part of the angler's line or hook, which moves the float like a bite, when, if you strike, you will generally hook the fish. The chance of this is increased by putting two hooks on the line about eight inches apart one above the other, when the water is thick, and during the night.

#### REMARKS ON BARBEL.

The Barbel spawn in April or May, and are in season about a month after. They delight to lie in deeps, in eddies, at the end of scowers in mill-pools, mill-streams, the tails of mills, and under beds of weeds and banks, routing up the gravel or sand with their noses, like pigs, feeding on worms, and the small water-snail, or periwinkle, the shells of which are often found in their stomachs.

The back of the Barbel is of an olive-brownish colour, the belly white or silvery; the scales all over the body are placed in the most exact order, the mouth is under-hung, the body is long, thick, and full: upon the whole, the Barbel, when well grown and in season,

means he can see a bite long after other anglers have packed up their tackle. This gentleman kills many heavy fish by this method, as most large fish are very shy of day-light.

is a noble handsome looking fish. Very large Barbel are taken in the Horse and Groom subscription water at Lea-bridge, some weighing upwards of fourteen pounds: a friend of mine, (Mr. Robinson,) took one there on Saturday, the 21st of May, 1814, which weighed twelve pounds. There are likewise fine Barbel as far up this river as Waltham-abbey, particularly at Tottenham-mills, in Bannister's water, Mr. Bowerbank's, (the last is private property,) and in the subscription water at Bleak-hall, Edmonton,\* formerly called Cook's and Jeremy's ferry; but of late years a bridge has been built there. Barbel are very rarely taken as high up as Broxbourn and Hoddesdon, on the Lea. In the Thames, the heaviest are taken at Staines, Chertsey-bridge, Shepperton, Walton, and Hampton-deeps. They are also taken at Thames Ditton, Kingston, Twickenham, and Richmond; but seldom so large as at the first-mentioned places. Barbel are numerous in France, Spain, and Portugal.

\* It was at this spot (as Sir JOHN HAWKINS tells the story) where an angler hooked a Barbel, and held him five hours, walking backwards and forwards on the bank, or, as he expressed himself, led by the fish as the blind man is by his dog, fearing to attempt to land him, from the largeness of the fish and the slightness of his tackle, still hoping he would ultimately tire out his prize; but in vain, for night coming on, and his patience being exhausted, he made a vigorous effort to get him on shore, when his tackle broke, and consequently the fish escaped. This trial of the angler's patience was witnessed by some gentlemen who were on their way to Walthamstow, to dinner, and who, on their return, found the man still engaged with a very heavy fish; thinking he had good sport, they congratulated him thereon, but were filled with amazement on learning it was the same fish they saw him hook five hours before.



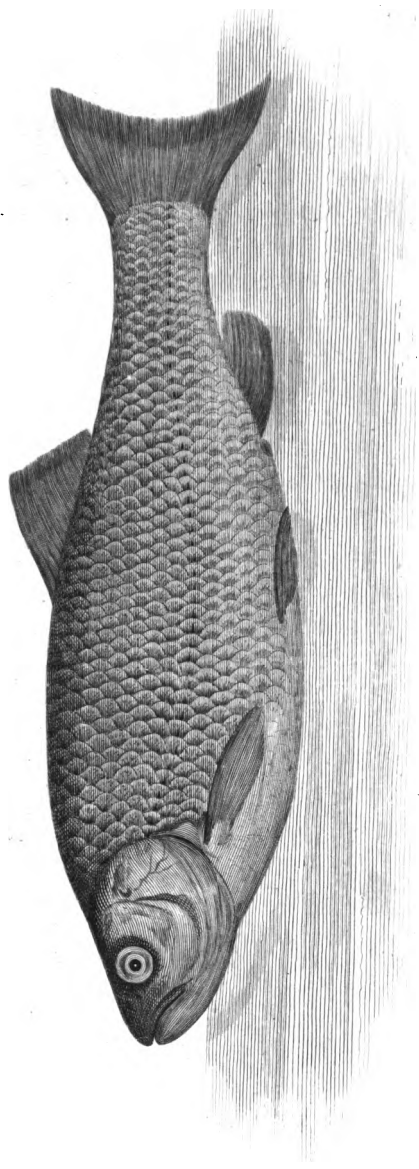
**BAITS FOR BARBEL, AND THE SEASONS TO USE  
THEM.**

In the month of March and April, Barbel begin to feed or take a bait in the river Lea, well-scoured red worms are then a good bait ; and also when the water is somewhat thick, and late in the evenings, gentles are sometimes a successful bait, but graves the most killing during the whole season.—Note, when worms are used for baiting, a ledger line for Barbel, marsh or small lobs are proper.





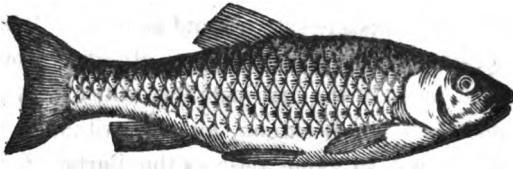
# CHIUB.



G. Hardy, delin.

R. Carpenter, sculp.

## CHAP. VIII.

DIRECTIONS HOW TO ANGLE FOR AND TAKE THE  
CHEVIN, OR CHUB.\*

The fearful Chevin loves the shaded stream.

THE Chub is a river fish, rather bony, and not very choice food, particularly in summer: (the French call him in derision *un vilain*.) They are firmer and better tasted during the spring, autumn and winter months. The Chub will feed all the year, and is a bold-biting fish, either at the top of the water or bottom: at the top he greedily takes flies, cockchafers, bees, &c. of which I shall speak when treating on fly-fishing; but you must observe though the Chub will bite boldly, yet they are a shy fish, and if they see you, they generally leave the hole or place while you remain.

When angling for Chub, where you have reason to expect a heavy fish, use running tackle, gut-line, quill

\* In some parts of the river Trent, which runs through Nottinghamshire, Chub are called Farmer's Sons, and differ something in their shape from those bred in the rivers Thames and Lea.

float, and hook, No. 8 or 9. Strike the moment you perceive a bite, and give plenty of line to let him run, for the Chub, when struck, generally runs furiously to the middle or opposite side without stopping; therefore it is necessary to give plenty of line, otherwise your fish will break away in the first instance, which they generally do when you hook one, and are without a winch on. He is not so game a fish as the Barbel, for after his first effort, and a few plunges, you may venture to look at him, and soon after bring him to the shore or landing net. The baits for Chub are greaves, gentles, paste, red worms, bullock's brains, and pith from the back-bone. Trolling or angling with a live minnow is often successfully practised, particularly in spring, by which method many large Chub are taken: troll the same as for Trout. During April and May, red worms are the best bait; two should be put on the hook, the same as for Barbel; for the Chub loves a large bait. In the summer months, gentles and greaves: during summer and autumn greaves only are the best bait; during winter, bullock's brains and pith is a killing bait;\* when

\* To bait with bullock's brains and pith, observe the following rules:—Take some pith of the back bone of an ox, and cut it into small pieces, nearly the size of a cherry, to bait the hook. The bullock's brains are to be chewed, and spit out of your mouth into the water, to entice the Chub. Before you begin, throw in some ground bait of bread and barley-meal, in which mix a little of the brains, plumb the depth, and fish close to the bottom; this method is practised during the winter, when Chub retire to deep still holes, where you must angle for them, and fear not taking very heavy fish, for at this season Chub are immoderately fond of the above bait. Note.—Chewing and spitting out the brains is called *blowing of brains*.

that bait is not to be procured, use paste made of bread and honey, which is the next in value for killing. Before you begin to angle for Chub, throw in plenty of ground-bait, and frequently while you are fishing, of the same sort as used for Barbel, or made with soaked bread, pollard, and bran, worked together: they bite during the whole day, but best in the morning and evening, in summer until quite dark, and all night. Fish as near the middle of the stream as you can in the spring months, and also on the shallows and scowers; but in the winter, in deep holes; let the bait drag two or three inches on the ground. From Michaelmas till May is the season for catching Chub by bottom fishing; June, July, and August, with flies, moths, bees, &c. at top.

#### REMARKS ON CHUB.

Chub never thrive well in ponds or canals, but increase and delight much in deep holes, scowers, tumbling bays, &c. in rivers, and will grow to the weight of seven pounds; in the autumn and cold weather they keep close in deep dark holes, or in the shelves under banks, and in holes that are shaded by large willow trees, whose branches hang close to or in the water. The river Lea is famous for large Chub from Temple-mills, or Lea-bridge, all the way to Hoddesdon and Ware. The Chub will feed all the year, and while alive will continue to harbour in the same hole; so true is the old saying among anglers, *Once a Chub-hole always a Chub-hole.*

D

Both Chub and Roach will bite the whole year round,  
The bait should touch and lightly drag the ground.

Although the Chub is not much prized for the table, they are a very handsome fish in form and colour, until they attain the weight of two pounds : afterwards, as they increase in size, they diminish in the symmetry of their shape, particularly by the enlargement of the head. When quite in season, and about two pounds in weight, they greatly resemble the Carp, but are rather longer. They generally spawn in the beginning of May, and deposit it in the gravel, on the sharps and scowers, which points out to the observing angler where to fish for them in the spring. They eat better while full than after they have spawned : the spawn fried with the fish at this season, will be found very palatable, and perfectly harmless : when stewed in the same manner as Carp, they are far from indifferent food, especially during winter and spring.

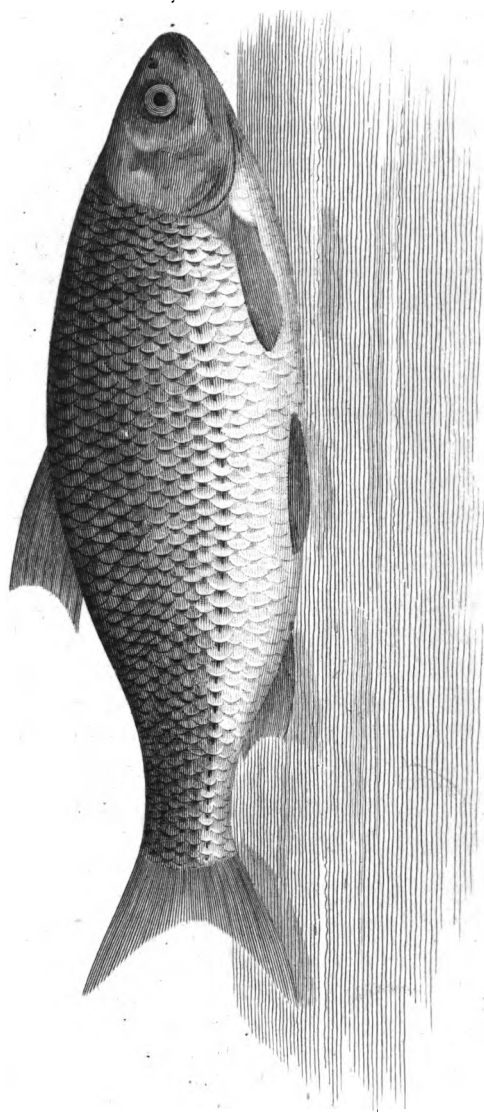
#### BAITS FOR CHUB, AND THE SEASONS TO USE THEM.

During the winter months, bullock's brains or pith is the best bait : when the spring commences use well-scoured red worms, gentles, and greaves. During the summer months Chub feed very little at bottom ; flies, both natural and artificial, are then proper. See Fly Fishing. In the autumn use worms, gentles, and greaves again.





ROACH.



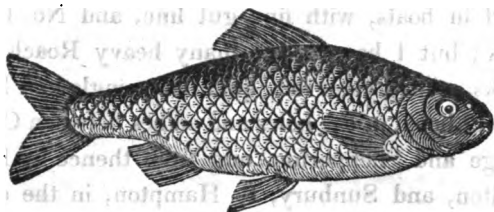
R. Carpenter Sculp.

C. Hardy delin.

## CHAP. IX.

**Anxious by the gliding stream,  
See the steady angler watch,  
Trying every wily scheme  
The heedless finny tribe to catch.**

SCOTT.



**DIRECTIONS HOW TO ANGLE FOR AND TAKE THE  
RUTILUS, OR ROACH.**

Unwary Roach the sandy bottom choose.

THE rivers Thames and Lea breed an amazing number of Roach: although they are not considered a very delicious fish, I by no means think them indifferent food when in season, particularly if they are of a tolerable size, and caught in a river. They should be dressed as soon as possible after they are caught. By some persons they are considered a silly fish, and easily to be taken; but it requires much skill and practice, and a quick and steady eye, before any can pretend to the character of a good Roach angler. Having acquired the art of managing fine hair lines, and extremely

D 2

light cane rods, (by which the proficient in Roach-fishing will kill them upwards of a pound weight,) the angler may certainly feel himself competent to kill or take fish in any way practised in bottom or float-fishing.

Angling for Roach in the Thames is generally practised in boats, with fine gut line, and No. 10 or 11 hook; but I have killed many heavy Roach from its banks, with a cane rod, quill float, single hair line, and No. 12 hook, in the holes and eddies between Chertsey-bridge and Shepperton, and from thence by Haliford, Walton, and Sunbury, to Hampton, in the course of which rout the angler will find many good holes and swims: also in the meadows at Teddington, and on the opposite side from Kingston to Richmond. To take Roach like an artist, you must use a light cane rod, near twenty feet long, with a fine light stiff top, a single hair line, a tip-capped float, and No. 12 hook: observe when fishing, your line above the float must not be more than twelve or fourteen inches long, or you will not hit a fine bite; the float should be so shotted that not much more than an eighth of an inch appear above the water, for Roach (and very often the heaviest) bite so fine or gently, that without attending to the above nicety in adjusting your line, you will loose the chance of two bites out of three. In angling for Roach, a sitting posture is to be preferred, as by that means you are more out of sight. Always keep the top of your rod over the float, and when you see the

---

least movement of it, strike quick, but lightly, (the motion coming from your wrist, not from the arm) or you will break the line ; if you have hit or hooked a fish, raise the top of your rod, keeping him as much under the top as you can, the butt down nearly touching the ground, and by playing him carefully he will soon be your own ; in this fine fishing it is best to take with you a landing-net, particularly if you fish off a high bank, or you will hazard breaking in weighing the fish out. Roach may be taken with larger hooks and stronger tackle than that which I have described, but they who fish finest will succeed best, say ten to one.

The best bait for Roach is paste, made of second-day's-baked white bread, slightly dipped in water, which must be immediately squeezed out again ; then place it in the palm of your left hand, and knead it with the thumb and finger of your right, until of a proper consistence. Roach will take this paste nearly the whole year, and by adding a little vermillion, it will be of a pink colour, which they sometimes prefer ; in summer they will also take gentles, and in the spring and autumn frequently blood and red worms ; but paste is the most killing bait : put a piece on the hook about the size of a pea. Before you begin, plumb the depth accurately, and let your bait gently touch the bottom ;\*

\* During very warm weather, Roach swim near the surface of the water, and will then sometimes take the bait at mid-water better than at bottom, but this does not often occur, therefore always begin to fish with the bait slightly touching the bottom. After trying this

you should occasionally take the depth again, particularly if the fish leave off feeding, which they will do if you have lost the proper depth: this happens in rivers from the water rising or falling from tides, mills, &c. Ground-bait plentifully before you begin with small balls of the same mixture as that used for Chub and Barbel fishing, and while angling, cast in that or chewed bread frequently, close to the float. When angling in a still hole, or gentle eddy, nothing is so good for ground bait as bread, if made into very small pellets, the same size as you bait with thrown by three or four together frequently, close about the place your hook moves in. During July and August, Roach may be taken with an ant-fly or a house-fly, put on a No. 13 hook, and single hair line: put one small shot on about four inches above the hook, to sink the bait to the bottom, then draw it up to the surface of the water; the Roach generally take as it approaches the top: when fishing this way try around piles, bridges, flood-gates, and deep still holes.

#### REMARKS ON ROACH.

Roach breed and thrive in canals, ponds, and lakes, but best in rivers:\* in rivers they are found on the

way, and not meeting any success, you may angle at mid-water, but I believe, few Roach of a good size, are taken at mid-water, therefore I always fish at bottom.

\* When angling in rivers, particularly for Roach or any other fish, (Jack, Pike, and Perch, excepted,) make choice of a place or swim that is shoal at the end of it; because as the ground-bait separates it

---

shallows, in eddies, and in deep holes, also about bridges, piles, and locks; in ponds, near flood-gates, and those parts where the bottom is sandy. They bite all the year in rivers, best late in the evening, during summer, but only during the summer months in ponds. Very large roach are sometimes taken under Lea-bridge in the winter season, by sitting on the cross-beams, and fishing between the piles or arches.

The Roach is a handsome fish, either in the water or out, when in full health and season; which may be reckoned from September until March, their scales then lie very smooth, they have a fine eye, and the fins are a bright red, the tail the same, somewhat mixed with a purple hue; they spawn about the latter end or middle of May; in forward summers, or after mild winters, they will cast their spawn in the latter end of April. For some weeks after they are very sickly, their scales are nearly as rough as oyster-shells, and they are altogether unfit for food if caught; but at this time Roach are not much disposed to take a bait, particularly the large fish. Towards the latter end of July they begin to improve in health and will feed; but they will do so much better some weeks later in the season, after leaving the weeds on which they have fed, and

drifts down, and will lodge there, and keep the fish about, and your baited hook also will touch the bottom all the way; but if the end of a swim is deeper than the top or beginning, your baited hook will not then be at a proper depth, which is material, as the fish generally bite at the end of the swim.

---

which begin to turn sour in September. Roach seldom exceed two pounds in weight ; indeed it is very unusual to catch them so large : though I have heard of one being taken in the Grand Junction Canal, which weighed three pounds and a half. Some Roach are taken in Shepherd's Water, at Hoddesdon, spotted with black specks on their bodies and gills.

INSTRUCTIONS HOW TO DRY AND PRESERVE ROACH,  
DACE, FLOUNDERS, &c.

The following method for preserving Roach, Dace, and Flounders, I have practised for several years, which affords a good relish at breakfast, when dried whiting or any other tasty food is not to be had. Having gutted the fish, wash them, and rub a little salt in the inside : let them remain in this state twelve hours, when you will find the water drawn from them nearly to fill the dish. Pour that away, and rince the fish with some fresh water, and hang them on a string in rows to drain and dry : they will become plump, and be fit for use in a few days. This method will likewise answer for whiting, or any sea-fish. The heads are of no value when dried, therefore it is best to cut them off before the fish are salted.

BAITS FOR ROACH, AND THE SEASONS TO USE THEM.

During the winter paste is the best bait : in the spring they will sometimes take red and blood worms, and also gentles freely, but seldom refuse paste ; in the summer

---

they will take gentles at mid-water and bottom ; when August commences always prefer paste to any other bait till the following spring. Many experienced anglers use no other bait for Roach than paste all the year round.

#### PLUMBING THE DEPTH FOR ROACH.

If with a ring plummet, pass the hook through the ring, and fix the point in the cork at the bottom of the plummet ; if a folding plummet, unfold about two inches of it, then pass the hook over its side, (as represented in the cut No. 2, plate No. 3) ; now fold the plummet up again, which secures the hook from slipping off or drawing away from the plummet ; having so done, cast in the hook, &c. adjust your float, so that when the plummet is on the ground, the tip of the float just appears on the surface of the water, your bait will then lightly touch the ground.





## CHAP. X.



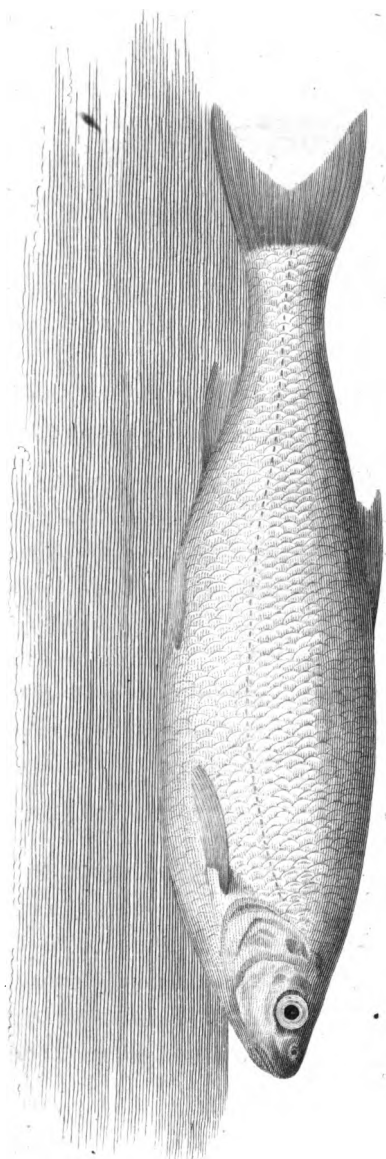
**DIRECTIONS HOW TO ANGLE FOR AND TAKE THE  
LEUCISSUS, OR THE DACE OR DACE.**

The silvery Dace in sharpest streams delight.

THE Dace is a very handsome fish, and considered as light nutritious food : \* they also afford the angler much sport, generally biting bold. They are angled for with the same sort of tackle as is used in Roach fishing : indeed, where you find Roach in rivers, you will frequently take Dace ; but they are more likely to take your bait when angling for Barbel, with greaves or red worms, than the Roach, and will also rise more at a fly. Much amusement may be had by whipping for Dace, with two or three artificial flies on a line, and also with gentles, particularly in the evening—they

\* Large Dace scotched or crimped across, and broiled with the scales on, and the body unopened, are well-tasted fish, as are also large Roach dressed in the same way, from August to March. When cooked in this manner, the scales and skin will readily peel off, and leave the fish firm, and with all its juices remaining, which are nearly all lost by scraping, washing, gutting, and soaking in water. The smaller Dace fried, I think, are better than Roach or Bleak of the same size.

# IDACE.



W. H. B. 1840.

W. H. B. 1840.



---

will even take the bait by moon-light ; the best places for this sort of angling are the sharps and shallows at mill tails.

When you angle in a place more likely for Dace than Roach, which happens in the spring, in rapid scowers, especially near mill tails, and in strong eddies, you may use a hook one size larger than for Roach, particularly if you bait with a red worm, which they are fond of at this season : in summer, put two gentles on your hook, or a small piece of greaves and a gentle on the point : greaves is the best bait for large Dace. Let your bait gently drag on the bottom.

#### REMARKS ON DACE.

The Dace is a river-fish, and will not thrive in ponds or still waters. They do not bite much later in the season than October, but you may begin to fish for them in March.—Ground-bait the same as for Roach, or with only bran and clay mixed, and thrown into the water frequently. At this season Dace are found between mill streams and strong eddies, and gravelly sharps and shallows.

The Dare or Dace are gregarious and lively, but never attain to a great size ; seldom I believe, exceeding the weight of a pound. They spawn early in April, previous to which time they come on the shallows in great numbers, rub themselves on the gravel, and feed there until they have deposited their spawn in it. They

will at this time take a red worm freely. As the water at this season is generally thick, it will allow the angler to use tolerably strong tackle: some put on two No. 10 hooks, about nine inches apart, one above the other, and angle quite at bottom. The Dace rub themselves on the gravel for ease, and you will frequently find a considerable quantity of gravelly sand under and between the scales, about their sides and bellies: when in season, the Dace is a very handsome fish, covered with fine silvery scales, which are used in making artificial pearls.

#### BAITS FOR DACE, AND THE SEASONS TO USE THEM.

From March to May, red worms,\* gentles, and blood worms are the best baits. During the hot days in summer, Dace feed but little at bottom, preferring a fly at top. See fly-fishing, page , from July to October, gentles, paste, and greaves, are good baits.

\* To bait the hook with a worm, act as follows:—Hold the worm in your left hand, the hook in the right, enter the point of the hook a little below the head of the worm, and carry it down to within a quarter of an inch of its tail, draw the worm over the shank of the hook as much as you can, as well to hide the whipping on the shank of the hook, as to prevent the worm being easily sucked off, which some fish have the art of doing, without suffering the hook to come within their mouths. When blood-worms are used, you put three or four on at a time; but if the hook is tied on with unwaxed red silk, as many as will cover the point and barb is sufficient, the whole then appearing red alike. Observe always to keep the point of the hook covered or hid from the sight of fish; let your bait be worms, gentles, or paste, for very few fish will touch a bait if they see the point of the hook.

## CHAP. XI.

DIRECTIONS HOW TO ANGLE FOR AND TAKE THE  
GOBIUS FLUVIATILIS, OR GUDGEON.

Delays are dangerous.\*

THE Gudgeon is a sweet and mild fish, and much prized at the table when large and fresh caught: the rivers Thames and Lea boast of very fine and immense numbers. They are a bold-biting fish, and afford much amusement to the young angler: they may be taken from April till October, all the day. In the Thames they are generally fished for with a red worm, gut or hair line, light cork, or stout quill float, and No. 10 hook. They spawn three times in the year, and are best

\* This old adage was strongly exemplified in the case of a certain simple youth, whose delight was angling, and who was fishing for Gudgeons on the day appointed for his marriage. He purposed meeting his bride, and the party usually attendant on such occasions, at church by the appointed hour; he delayed however, leaving the river until he had caught another fish, and then another, till it became too late to attend the marriage ceremony: the lady was highly offended, and, in consequence, he lost his wife by stopping to take *another gudgeon*. This angler was the Rev. GEORGE HARVEST, see *Eccentric Mirror*, vol. 1.

for the table in the spring, for at this season their chief food is small worms; and the spawn of other fish, but as the weeds grow up they feed a good deal on them, which makes their flesh less firm, and in summer gives it rather a bitter taste.

In the river Lea they angle with much finer tackle for Gudgeon, and generally bait with blood worms, using a light rod, single hair line, quill float, and No. 12 hook: the same tackle is also used in the New River.

#### REMARKS ON GUDGEONS.

Angling for Gudgeons commences in April in the river Lea: the best place in this river is in the subscription water at the Horse and Groom, near Lea-bridge, where many dozens are taken daily until July, when they move to the eddies, or among weeds and deeper water; they are then caught occasionally while fishing for Roach, &c. Gudgeons are taken on the shallows, where the river is free from weeds, and the bottom gravel or sand, which must be frequently stirred while fishing, with a long rake made for the purpose; in this way of angling, you often hook a small Perch, and sometimes a Salmon Trout, or Skeggar:\* plumb the depth before you begin, and let the bait touch the ground.

\* Among experienced anglers this fish is generally supposed to be young Salmon, because they are caught in rivers that have a communication with the sea, to which place those fish are always making when taken by the angler in the spring and the early part of the summer, which is not the nature of Trout.

The Gudgeon is a handsome lively fish of a long shape, the back dark, the belly a dusky white, the body covered with small close scales, and somewhat of a dark purple hue, the dorsal or back fin and the tail are of a light brown, waved or spotted with darker brown: at the mouth hang two barbs or wattels, like those of the Carp. Gudgeons are seldom taken more than nine inches in length, or weighing more than four ounces: I have never heard of any that weighed half a pound.

The New River, and the Canals near London, abound with Gudgeons, but they are not so large (unless in the parts which are preserved) as those caught in the Thames and Lea; in which rivers I have frequently taken thirty dozen in the course of a day's angling. The Gudgeon is a gregarious fish, and may be seen in summer on the bottom of clean rivers, in herds of hundreds together; but they are very susceptible of cold, and retire as soon as the winter commences, and lie close together in the warmest part of the river, from which they do not move until spring. During the winter they will very seldom take a bait.

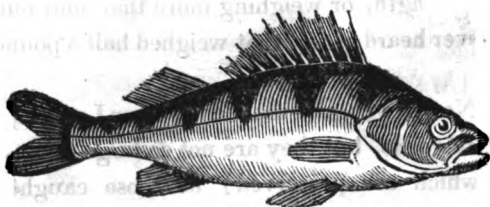
#### BAITS FOR GUDGEONS, AND THE SEASONS TO USE THEM.

Blood worms and red worms are undoubtedly the best baits at all times for Gudgeons; they will take gentles and paste.



## CHAP. XII.

In genial spring, beneath the quivering shade,  
Where cooling vapours breath along the mead,  
The patient fisher takes his silent stand,  
Intent, his angle trembling in his hand.      *Porx.*

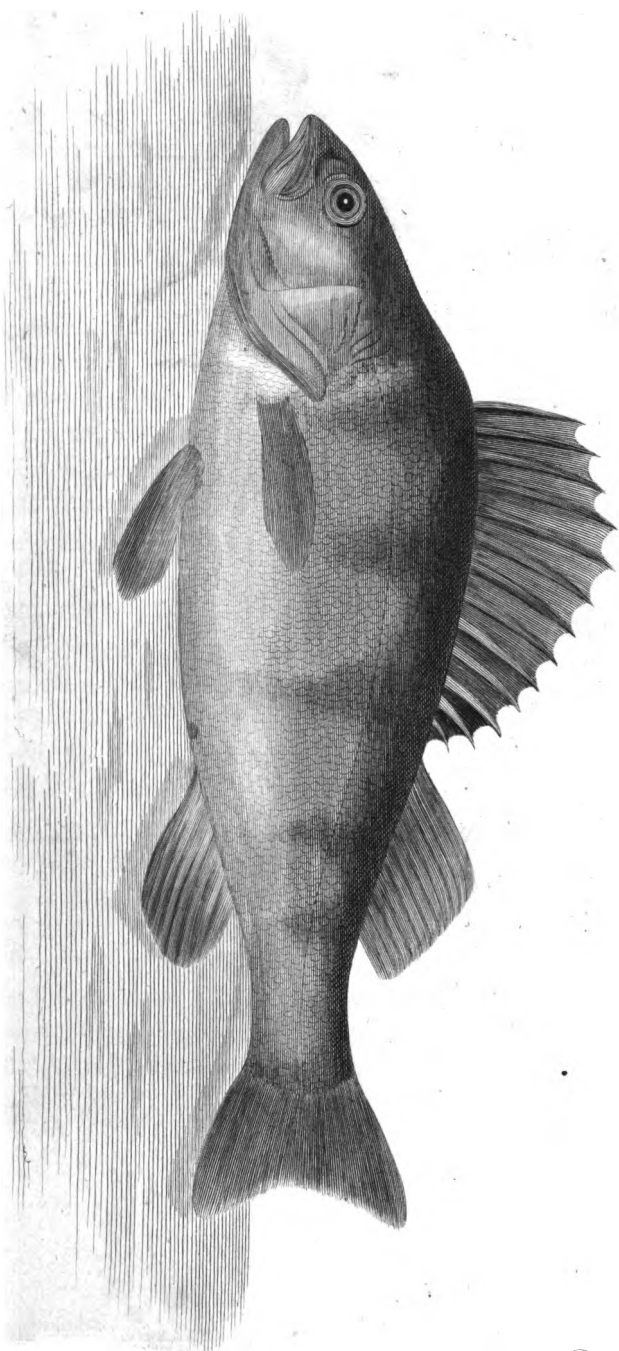


**DIRECTIONS TO ANGLE FOR AND TAKE THE PERCA  
FLUVIATILIS, OR PERCH.**

The bright-eyed Perch with fins of Tyrian dye.

THE Perch is reckoned a firm, nutritious fish, excelled by none of the fresh water tribe: they are a bold fish, and generally take a bait immediately it is offered. Strong tackle is used in angling for them, a cork, or large quill float, gut, silk, or twisted hair line, and No. 7 or 8 hook: the usual bait for Perch is a worm well scoured, either marsh brandling, or the red; I prefer putting two red worms on a hook instead of one of the other kind, which are larger. When the water is very bright, I use strong single hair, and No. 10 hook. They are also angled for with a live or unboiled shrimp, which they are remarkably fond of, also boiled shrimps,

# PERCH.



C. Hardy. deln.

R. Carpenter. Sculp.



with the shell or case taken off, particularly in the different wet docks at Blackwall, and likewise in the canal which runs across the Isle of Dogs, where very good and numerous Perch are taken, especially during the months of August and September. From the bank, and about the ships, Perch are also caught with a live Minnow, small Bleak, Dace, or Gudgeon, hooked by the lips or back fin, or by trolling for them in the same way as for Trout: when fishing in this manner for Perch, you should always have running tackle on, for sometimes a Pike, Trout, or Chub, will take it, and larger Perch are caught this way than with a worm; it is likewise necessary to give them a few minutes time to pouch, and, as they often run a considerable distance before they do this, without running-tackle you certainly would break, or lose your fish. When you have a bite with a worm-bait, let him run about the length of a yard, and then strike smartly: the bait should be about a foot from the bottom.—Some angle for Perch with two hooks on a line, one at mid-water, the other lower, which is a good way in the spring months, for the water is then somewhat thick and high; the Perch then swim at all depths and also close in-shore.\*

\* Some anglers fish for Perch in the following manner: take a yard of gut, and place a perforated barrel-shot on it, within a foot of one end, and a small shot above and below the barrel one, to keep it where it was first placed: then take a hook, No. 7, tied to a double bristle, and fasten it on the middle of the barrel-shot, fix a live Minnow, either by the back or lip on your hook, at the bottom on

E

## ROVING AND DIPPING FOR PERCH.

When the angler is favoured with a breeze of wind, and the water a little coloured, much sport may be expected by roving and dipping for Perch with worms. Take a No. 7 hook, tied to about nine inches of strong single gut, or twisted hair or gut, and bait it with two well-scoured red worms, as follows:—Enter the point of the hook in the first worm at the head, and carry it down to and out of the tail; draw it up over the shank of the hook to the line: while you place the other on the hook, enter the point of the hook in

the longest end of the gut fix a large bullet; the other end of the gut should be looped, and fixed to your line, that is on a rod. You then cast in the water, the bullet at bottom keeps the whole stationary. The Minnow swims around the line, and from the stiffness of the bristles is kept from entangling, which would be the case if gut or hair was used instead thereof; the live Minnow is very likely to attract the Perch if any are near. I have known other anglers to put two or three small live fish in a globular white glass bottle, and fasten a string to the neck of it, and when they angled for Perch, with a live Minnow, or other small fish, to put this globular bottle into the water, to attract the Perch, by the fish within it. The method above described of fishing for Perch is by some adopted for Jack and Pike, using gymp instead of bristles to the hook, and a line sufficiently strong to hold a heavy fish, that is a platted trolling line; this way of angling will sometimes succeed in holes that are very near heavy beds of weeds, because when a Jack or Perch takes a bait in those places, he generally goes to those weeds to pouch it, to prevent which this method is pursued; for when the Jack or Perch strikes a bait on a hook or line fitted as above described, he finds a little check, which is thought to induce him to pouch immediately, and you secure your fish before he can reach the weeds which would probably break your tackle.

this second worm a little below the head, and carry it down within a quarter of an inch of its tail ; then draw the first worm back again on your hook close to the second, the shank and all parts of the hook will be then covered, and the bait complete ; put about three shot, six inches above the hook, to sink it :—fasten this gut or hair (to which the hook is tied,) to a fine trolling line that is fixed to a winch on a rod, with rings ; draw out as much line as you can manage to cast in, and if the wind is at your back, and the stream or water not very broad, throw to the opposite side, and let your bait drop from the bank gently into the water, and sink, then rise it to the surface, and so act, raising and falling it, till you bring the bait near the side on which you stand : if you feel a bite don't check it, but let the fish run a yard or two before you strike—this is called roving, because the bait is cast far and near. Dipping for Perch is dropping the bait in holes, eddies behind and among weeds, close to banks, wharfings, piles, &c. and letting it sink nearly to the bottom, then draw up, let it sink again, &c. till a bite is felt, then act as directed in roving : bait the hook the same, the only difference between the two methods is in having more line out, and casting the bait further from you while roving than dipping ; in summer sometimes a bunch of gentles are a more enticing bait than worms.

## REMARKS ON PERCH.

Perch angling commences in February, and continues till October ; but during the hot months they feed

very little. Dark windy weather, if not too cold, is best for Perch fishing, they will then feed all day, but best in the morning, and especially about an hour, or an hour and a half before dark.

Perch delight to lie about bridges, and mill-pools, and near locks, shipping, barges, &c. in navigable rivers and canals, also in deep and dark still holes, and in the back water of mill-streams, as well as in the eddies; in ponds about flood gates, on the gravel or sandy parts, and near the sides of rushes. You need not wait long in a place, for if there are any Perch about, and they are inclined to feed, they will soon take the bait, and if you meet with them in a still hole, with care you may take them all, for, if not disturbed, by letting one fall off your hook, they will, one after the other, take the bait almost immediately it settles in the water, therefore give time when you have a bite, that the fish may gorge before you strike, for more Perch are lost by the angler striking too soon when he perceives a bite than by breaking the tackle after they are fairly hooked.

The Perch in shape is thick and broad in proportion to its length, seldom exceeding sixteen inches, and as they increase in weight, they become more hog-backed; they have a fine eye, small head, and large mouth, in which are many teeth: the tail, and belly fins are a bright orange red, or vermillion, the first dorsal or back fin is spinous, which it erects on the approach of a Jack or Pike: and if the Perch is a large

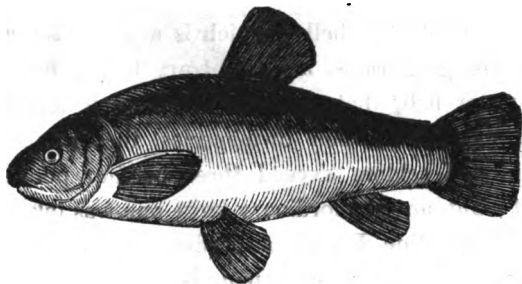
one, the enemy generally retires, though leisurely. The back and upper part of the sides are a dark green colour, some parts darker in waves or thick irregular stripes towards the belly, which is a yellowish white. Perch are gregarious, and, contrary to the nature of fresh-water fish, that swim in shoals, will sometimes attack and devour their own species, they are slow of growth, and seldom exceed three or four pounds in weight; but an extraordinary large one was taken out of the Serpentine River, in Hyde Park, a few years since, which weighed nine pounds. Perch spawn in March, and soon recover their health. The Germans are very partial to this fish; according to Gesner, they prefer them to Trout, who farther says, river Perch are considered so wholesome that medical men allow their patients in fevers, or other sickness, and even women in childbed, to eat of them.

#### BAITS FOR PERCH AND THE SEASONS TO USE THEM.

Live Minnows, very small Gudgeons, and well-scoured worms, are the best baits for Perch at all times; they will take clap bait, bobs, grubs, and gentles occasionally, more especially in ponds and still waters during very hot weather.—Note, a live Minnow or a Gudgeon of the same size, hook'd by the lip with a No. 6 or 7 hook, a small cork float on the line and running tackle, is the most killing way of angling for large Perch,

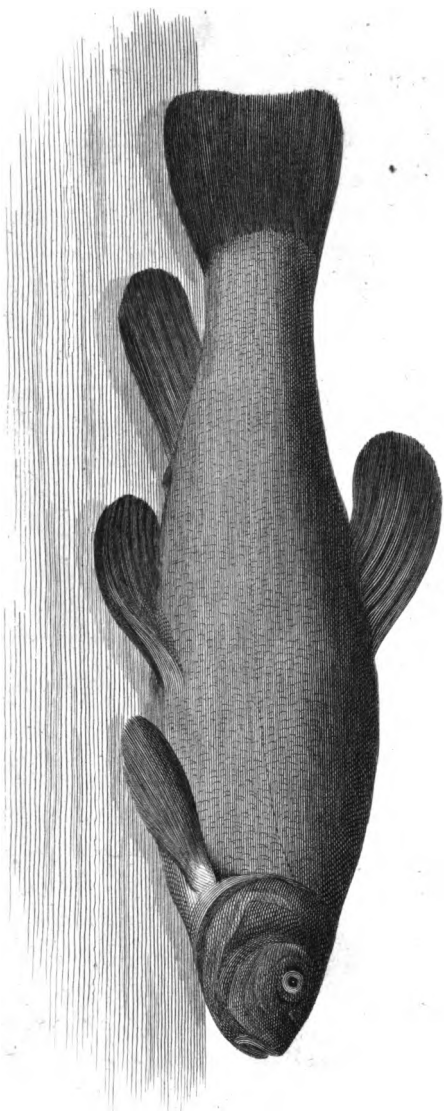


## CHAP. XIII.

DIRECTIONS HOW TO ANGLE FOR AND TAKE THE  
TINCA, OR TENCH.

THE Tench is generally prized as a fine rich fish in England, but it is not much esteemed on the continent: the Germans, in derision, call it *the Shoe-maker*; but they are very scarce in most of the rivers and streams about London; some few are taken in the spring and summer, out of the river Thames and Lea, also in the Camberwell and Croydon canals: I have caught very fine Tench in the river Roding, at Abridge, Woodford-bridge, and near the bridge called Red-bridge, at Wanstead, particularly in the holes to the north of the bridge in the meadows: the ponds in Wanstead-Park abound with Tench. They take red worms in the spring, and gentles or sweet paste in the hot months; use a fine gut-line, quill float, and No. 10 hook; fish close to the bottom, and ground-bait with small pellets of bread, or chewed bread; and if in a pond or still water, throw in a dozen or two of gentles, or pieces of

# MENCHI.



C. Hardy delin.

R. Carpenter sculp.



---

worms, frequently, close to your float. When the large Tench take a bait, especially in still waters, they generally sink the float straight down.

The tench will breed in rivers, lakes and ponds, but they thrive best in ponds, where the bottom is composed of loam, clay, or mud, and in foul weedy waters ; they bite very free in summer during warm, close, dark weather, and particularly while small rain descends in the evening or morning. Your bait should nearly touch the ground in ponds, but must drag a little on the bottom in rivers : fish early and late. Indeed, unless it rains, very few Tench are ever caught in the day, but very early in the morning, or late in the evening. After a good deal of warm rain has fallen, Tench will take the small white snail or slug, which is then found in numbers on grass-plots in gardens : begin to angle for them in ponds, or still waters, early in May, and continue until September : in rivers, they are sometimes caught in April.

#### REMARKS ON TENCH.

The Tench is not a very handsome fish in shape, being short and thick, and when of a large size, nearly as broad as they are long : their scales are very small and close, and the whole body covered with a slimy glutinous substance, which is considered to be of a balsamic quality, healing the wounded and sick of all the finny race ; for which purpose the sick and wounded rub themselves against the Tench, and receive a cure : this is the general and received opinion, and, in conse-

quence, the Tench is honoured with the name of the *Physician*, and is respected even by the all-devouring Pike.

Pike, fell tyrant of the liquid plain,  
With ravenous waste devours his fellow train ;  
Yet, howsoe'er with raging famine pin'd,  
The Tench he spares, a medicinal kind ;  
For, when by wounds distress'd, or sore disease,  
He courts the salutary fish for ease,  
Close to his scales the kind physician glides,  
And sweats the healing balsam from his sides.

Whether the forbearance of the Pike arises from respect to the healing qualities of the Tench, or is to be attributed to a dislike of the slimy matter on its body, I know not, but I believe the Tench is perfectly free from the persecution suffered by all the other species of fish ; for I have never taken one that has been at all mutilated in its fins, tail, or any other part, or with any of those wounds or scars on the body, which are so frequently met with by the angler among the small fish he takes. The Eel also forgoes his voracity, in regard to the Tench, both by night and day. I have known several trimmers to be laid at night, baited with live fish, Roach, Dace, Bleak, and Tench, each about six or seven inches long ; and when those trimmers were examined in the morning, both Eels and Jack have been taken by the hooks baited with any other fish but the Tench, which I found as lively as when put in the river the preceding night, without ever having been disturbed : this has invariably been the

case during my experience ; neither have I met with even one solitary instance to the contrary related by any of my acquaintance, who have had numerous opportunities of noticing the singular circumstances of the perfect freedom from death or wounds, which the Tench enjoys over every other inhabitant of the liquid element, arising from the continual conflicts among each other. Tench generally spawn about the latter end of June: they are seldom caught so large as to weigh five pounds, but that they grow much larger I do not doubt, from many cases of their having been found much larger, in ponds that were emptied, in order to cleanse them from an accumulations of weed, mud, &c. The most remarkable account of a Tench is that of one found in the year 1801, in a hole at the bottom of a choked-up pond, at Thornville Royal, Yorkshire, the seat of Colonel Thornton, which measured two feet nine inches in length, and two feet three inches in circumference, and weighed nearly twelve pounds. This wonderful Tench had taken the shape of the hole in which it had been confined for years ; its colour also differed from the usual golden or bronze hue of the Tench, the belly being as it were tinged with vermillion: when put into a pond, it soon recovered the power of swimming, but seemingly with some difficulty, doubtless from having led a life of idleness for so many years.



**BAITS FOR TENCH, AND THE SEASONS TO USE  
THEM.**

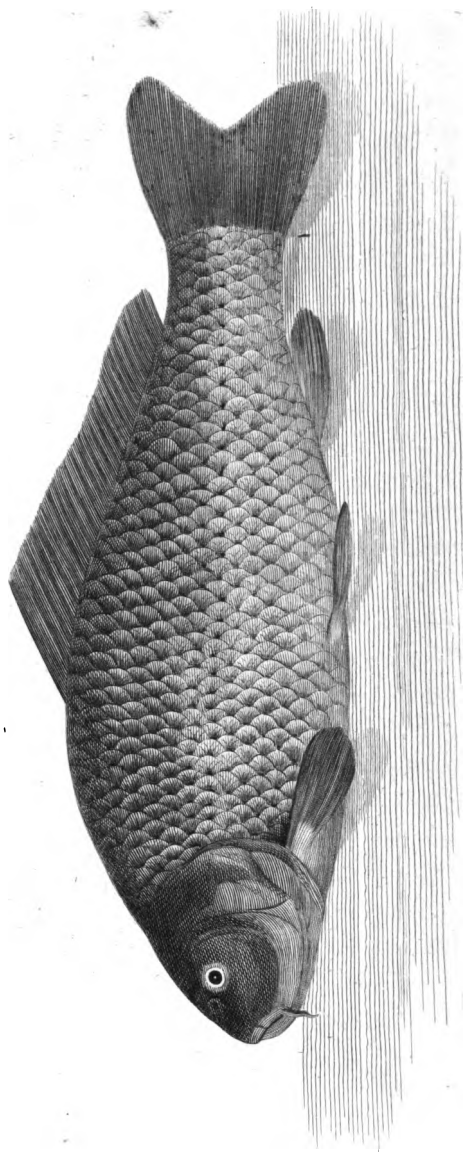
During April and May, blood worms and red worms are the best baits : as the season further advances, prefer baiting with gentles and sweet paste, and so continue to the end.







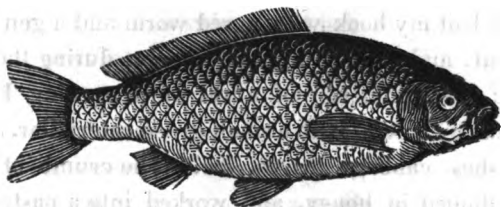
# CARP.



R. Carpenter. Sculp.

C. Hardy. delin.

## CHAP. XIV.

DIRECTIONS HOW TO ANGLE FOR AND TAKE THE  
CYPRINUS, OR CARP.

The yellow Carp, with scales bedropp'd with gold.

THE Carp is a beautiful fish, and much prized by many for its richness, particularly when stewed in wine. They are not very numerous, either in the river Thames or Lea, but what are caught are remarkably fine and large, worth two from any canal, pit, or pond. The Carp is very shy in biting at a bait, particularly the large ones, who seem to increase in cunning and craft with their weight: in angling for them, use running-tackle, a small fine quill float, clear gut line, and No. 9 or 10 hook; indeed you must fish as fine as the nature of the water will allow, or you have little chance of taking Carp. They will begin to feed in rivers the latter end of February, if the weather is mild, from which time till the end of April they generally bite more freely than at any other part of the season, which goes out with October; but they will

not feed in still waters till May. The best bait (particularly early in the season) is well-scoured red worms; in the summer, gentles and paste: I frequently bait my hook with a red worm and a gentle at the point, and meet with much success during the first part of the summer. Of a wet warm evening I have had sport by baiting with a small green caterpillar, found on Bushes, cabbage leaves, &c.—The crumb of new bread dipped in honey, and worked into a paste, is a killing bait for Carp in rivers, or still waters, towards the autumn—you may use a piece nearly as large as a marble for a bait. When fishing with this paste, in still water, the Carp will suck it in so slyly, that without you keep a watchful eye, your bait will be gone without your discovering a bite: they are also very fond of the wasp gentle. In fishing for Carp, keep as far from the water as you can, and, if convenient, you should ground-bait the place you intend angling in, the night before, and also plumb the depth, that you may not have occasion to disturb the water when you begin to angle. Those who are inclined, or have an opportunity of pursuing this plan, will find they have not lost their labour. Carp will seldom bite in the middle of the day, unless soft light rain descends: the best time is as soon as you can see your float in the water, and very late in the evening—they will even feed all night. When you have hooked a carp, give line, use him gently, and with patience, for they are a very strong fish in the water, and will try every way to get off the hook. Ground-bait the same as for Roach,

---

but throw it in gently, and in small pieces, for Carp are soon alarmed ; when angling with sweet paste, frequently throw in a few small pieces of it close to your float : let your bait swim about half an inch from the bottom when angling in still water, but it must touch the bottom when fishing in a river or stream. Always keep out of the sight of Carp while angling for them, by sitting down behind weeds, &c. New-made grains, thrown in the night before, is a good ground-bait, especially in ponds or still holes in rivers. The angler must exert himself very early in the morning and late in the evening, when fishing for Carp, and if without success for many hours he must not think it strange, for it often occurs ; but hope and patience support the fisherman.

#### REMARKS ON CARP.

Carp are generally supposed to have been brought into this country about three hundred years since. Sir Richard Baker, in his *Chronicles of the Kings of England*, mentions the circumstances in the following couplet:

Hops and turkies, Carp and beer,  
Came into England all in a Year.

The Carp is a long-lived fish, and will continue to spawn from two to thirty years, or upwards, increasing in a wonderful manner ; for the roe is often found in this fish equal in weight to the whole of the remainder of the body : they will grow to the length of a yard or more.

I saw one that had died in the basin facing Tilney House, in Wanstead Park, that weighed eighteen pounds.

Carp in form are thick, the upper part of the sides are a greenish golden yellow, the lower part a whitish colour, the tail a sort of yellow violet, the mouth is small, with two wattles hanging from it; they have neither teeth nor tongue, but a fleshy palate. They spawn early in May, and again in August, during which time they are so intent in depositing their ova, that they may be easily caught with the hand, in small rivers, pits, and ponds; they are also often drawn out of ponds with rakes while spawning, though at other times no fish are more difficult to catch, even with nets, for they will escape the drag-net by leaping over it, or stick their heads in the mud while the cast or drag net passes over them. Carp will thrive well in rivers, but many believe they will only breed in still waters, canals, lakes and ponds: for it is very unusual to catch a small Carp in a river: in my own practice, I have never taken one less than six ounces, although in ponds hundreds less than four ounces. They are found in deep holes by or near flood-gates, in eddies, in and near large beds of weeds, on which they feed, sucking the juices therefrom, in doing which they may be heard by the chopping of their jaws. They will not feed in ponds later than Michaelmas, nor earlier than May, unless the weather is particularly mild. By being fed at stated periods, Carp become very tame and familiar. Dr. Smith, in speaking of the Prince of Condé's seat at Chantilly in France,

---

says, he saw immense shoals of large Carp silvered over with age, so perfectly tame, that when any person approached the water, they would swim to the shore in such numbers as to hoist each other out of the water as it were, to beg for bread, a quantity of which food was always ready for them ; and they became so familiar, the Doctor declares, as to allow themselves to be handled. Sir John Hawkins says, he was assured by a friend of his, that he saw a Carp come to the edge of a pond from being whistled to by a person who daily fed it. Carp are very tenacious of life, and will live longer out of the water than any other fish ; and it is generally believed they may be kept in a damp cool place, wrapped up in wet moss, for a considerable time : the mouth is left uncovered, and the fish must be frequently plunged in water, and oftentimes fed with bread and milk. They will become fat in about a fortnight, and I have been told they eat much better than when dressed immediately after they are taken from their own element. Gesner speaks of one in Germany that was known to be an hundred years old.

In the year 1782, a newspaper informs its readers, that there was a Carp in the basin at Emanuel College Cambridge, which had been in that water thirty-six years ; it had lost one of its eyes, but still knew, and would come to the side at the approach of its feeder ; and I have been told that it was alive ten years ago. Carp are gregarious, and are to be met with in Asia as well as in all parts of Europe. I have a friend in India,

who informs me that he catches Carp in the River Ganges and other waters, by angling with the tackle he took with him from Europe.

**BAITS FOR CARP, AND THE SEASONS TO USE THEM.**

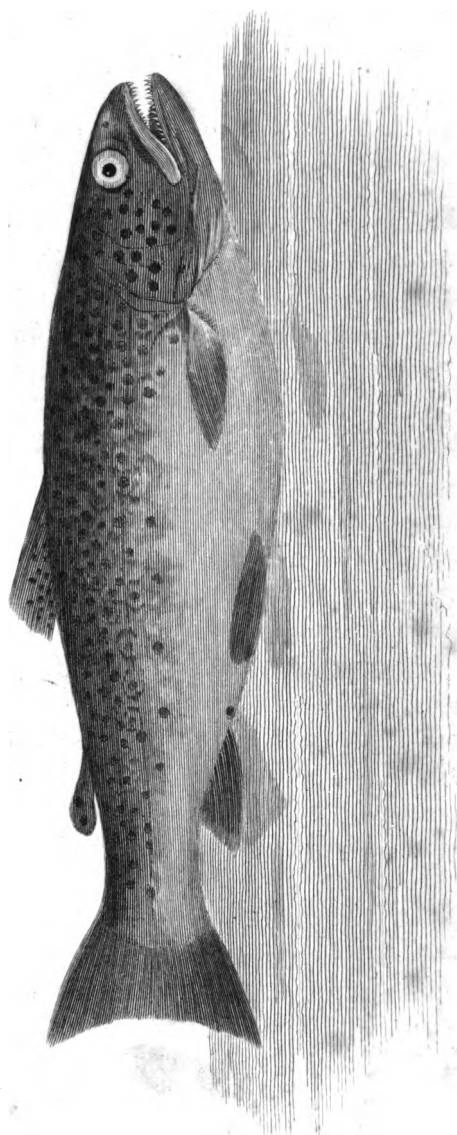
From February to July, blood worms, red worms, and gentles are the best baits ; for the remainder of the season use honey paste.—Note, fresh grains are an excellent ground-bait for Carp, Chub, Bream and Roach, thrown in where the water is deep and still, either in rivers, canals, or intire standing waters.







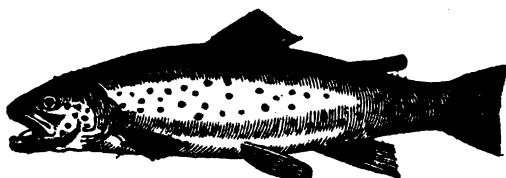
# TROUT.



R. C. C. C.

C. C. C. C.

## CHAP. XV.

DIRECTIONS HOW TO ANGLE FOR AND TAKE THE  
TRUTTA, OR TROUT.

Swift Trout, diversified with crimson spots.

THE Trout is a very beautiful fish, both in form and colour, much like the Salmon in shape, and is excelled by none the fresh waters breed as a delicacy at table, the Salmon excepted: they are voracious, like the Pike, and destroy multitudes of Minnows and other small fish, their jaws, mouth, and tongue being studded with teeth. The Trout are a very strong and game fish, affording the angler fine sport, which circumstance, with their being considered a delicacy at table, cause them to be eagerly sought for. In angling for them at bottom, use a strong rod, running-tackle, and No. 6 hook; when you bait with worms, which is the best method in the early part of the morning, and late at night, also during the day, if the water is much coloured, and the weather dull or boisterous; angle without a float, first putting sufficient shot on the line to sink the

F

bait—the shot to be placed about eight or nine inches above the hook. This bait must be one large lob-worm, or two marsh or two tag-tail worms, well scoured, and very lively; for trout will not touch a worm that is half dead, or any way mangled or dirty. Put the two worms on the hook in the following manner: run the point of your hook in at the top of the first worm's head, and bring it out about three parts down the body, then draw it carefully up over the arming or whipping of the hook, while you put on the other; enter the point of your hook in the second worm somewhat below the middle, and carry it near to the head, then draw the first worm down to join it. This done, cast in your bait, and let it gently drag the bottom:\* when a fish begins to bite, do not strike the first time you feel a tug, but rather slacken your line; when you feel two or three sharp tugs, then strike smartly, and if a heavy fish, give him line, and be not in too great haste to land him. It is necessary in angling this way to put as many shot on your line, as will readily sink the baited hook.

— With yielding hand feeling him still,  
Yet to his furious course give way,  
Till floating broad upon his breathless side,  
You safely drag your spangled prize on shore.

\* A hook so baited is called a tripping bait. Fishing in the dark, with a hook baited in this manner, is a most destructive way for Trout, (but not pleasant to a gentleman angler) with a short rod, and stout line, you let the bait just touch the surface of the water: the best Trout are then on the feed, and will take it boldly, which the angler is soon aware of, by the sudden jerk he will feel. As a killing bait, a large bunch of wasp gentles are as good as worms. In this mode of angling no shot is required on the line.

---

The Trout is very strong, and struggles most violently; sometimes, as soon as he feels the hook, he will leap out of the water more than a foot high, and, on falling again, will fly about in every direction, to the great alarm of the angler for his rod, line, or hook :

And flies aloft, and flounces round the pool.

I have taken many Trout when the water has been too bright for using strong tackle, by putting two or three yards of fine gut at the bottom, with a No. 10 hook, baited with one red worm of the largest size, well scoured. Run the point of the hook in near the tail, and draw the worm over the whipping or arming of your hook, the point and barb will then lie near the head ; in this state, cast in the stream opposite you, and let it sink gradually and swim down some yards below (for which purpose, put two or three shot on the line, about ten inches above the hook) ; then draw it up nearly to the surface, let it sink again, and so continue till you bring it near you. If a bite, act as directed with the strong running tackle, to which this two or three yards of fine must be fastened. While thus angling with a tripping bait keep as far from the water as you can, and let the bait go with the middle or roughest part of the stream.

The Minnow is a most killing bait for a Trout, particularly when used by spinning it against the stream, or in the eddies, where the water falls over into tumbling-bays, mill-tails, pools, &c. Hooks are fitted on purpose for this mode of angling by the tackle-makers. When you are thus fishing, use strong tackle, and cast

---

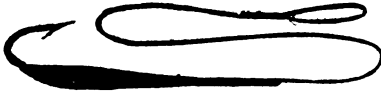
your bait lightly in the water, and draw against the stream or eddy very near the surface, so that you can see the Minnow: if you are angling from a high bridge, or any eminence, it will be best to let your bait be some considerable distance from you, particularly if the water is bright; this way of angling for Trout is often very successful, and the largest fish are taken by it. When you have a bite, let him run a little before you strike: in fishing with a live Minnow, hook it by the lips, or beneath the back fin; (some anglers put on their line a small cork-float;) use a No. 6 hook, and let your bait swim much below mid-water. Deep dark holes, that are free from eddies or stream, are the most likely places to take a Trout in, when fishing with a live Minnow. Trout are also taken with flies, both natural and artificial, which I shall describe under the head of fly fishing.

Trout will begin to feed in March, if the weather is fine for the season, and continue till Michaelmas: about a month after this time they spawn. The first two or three months are the best for bottom fishing; the Trout are then on the scowers and shallows, and feed most at bottom, the weather being frequently cold and unsettled, so that few flies are found on the water till April or May. In summer season especially, the large Trout love to lie in deep holes and eddies, near mill-tails, and pools; sometimes close to the apron, which is a good place to drop in a worm bait. You cannot be too early or late in fishing for Trout, as they seldom feed in the

---

day, unless after a flood, or in dark weather, accompanied with a good breeze of wind.

**MINNOW HOOK THE SHANK LEADED FOR TROLLING OR  
ROVING FOR TROUT, PERCH, AND CHUB.**



**TROLLING, ROVING, OR DIPPING FOR TROUT WITH  
A MINNOW OR WORMS.**

Get such a hook as is represented in the cut, (all the principal Tackle Shops keep them) tied to a length of the best twisted gut or fine plaited silk; for your bait use a bright moderate sized Minnow, which you put on the hook exactly in the same way as directed with the Gorge hook for Jack and Pike, only use a smaller needle, which is called a Minnow needle; fasten this length of gut to which the hook is tied to the running line on a light trolling rod; draw nearly as much line out as your rod is long; cast in your bait lightly in search first across the stream drawing over the current, raising and falling your bait, when you feel a bite lower the top of your rod a little; wait a moment or two then strike. This is generally called roving for Trout. In dipping your bait and tackle is the same; but there is not occasion for quite so much line, as the bait is only dropt in holes or eddies near the bank you stand on. When the bait touches the bottom gently and slowly raise it to the surface, and so continue till

you get a bite, then act as directed in roving ; if you bait with worms use a plain No. 5 or 6 hook, and put a few shot about 6 inches above it to sink the bait, which should be two well scoured marsh or tag-tail worms. Put the point of the hook in the first just below the head, and bring it out a little below the middle, then draw the worm above the shank of the hook while you put on the second, enter the point of the hook in this worm near an inch below its head, and carry it down to within an inch of its tail, there let it remain hid in the worm ; then draw the first worm to join the second, and angle the same way as with the Minnow. Some bait with one lob worm. While fishing for Trout keep as far from the water and out of sight as possible, for Trout are as timid and suspicious as they are voracious and strong ; this method of angling for Trout may be adopted for Perch and Chub, indeed while in search of Trout you frequently kill a Perch or Chub.

The London angler has seldom the pleasure of bringing home a dish of Trout caught in either the river Thames or Lea ; for those rivers, however famous they may have been, at present contain but few : there are certainly many good Trout streams within twenty miles of the metropolis, but they are all private property.\* The river Wandle, particularly at Carshalton in Surrey, has numerous fine Trout ; and again at Merton-mills,

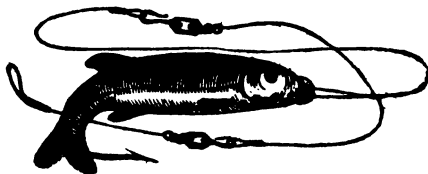
\* A famous piece of water at Rickmansworth was kept for the use of gentlemen who were fond of Trout-fishing ; the number of subscribers was limited to ten, who paid annually ten guineas each.

&c. till you arrive at Wandsworth. The little river called Ravensbourn, running from or by Sydenham, Lewisham, &c. to the Kent-road, Greenwich, has Trout ; at, and in the neighbourhood of Hungerford in Berkshire, is capital Trout fishing ; also the Darent, or Dartford-creek, may boast of many very fine Trout ; at Crayford, Bexley, Foot's-Cray, Paul's-Cray, &c. and near the powder-mills, through and near Darent, and Horton, to Farningham, in Kent ; also near Hertford, in the waters belonging to Earl Cowper, Mr. Baker, and other Gentlemen, and at Wade's-mill, Whet Hamstead, &c. At Rickmansworth in Hertfordshire, and its neighbourhood, are several good Trout streams, and from thence to Uxbridge, in Middlesex : at the latter place the angler may indulge himself in angling for Trout, by paying for board, and lodging at the Crown and Cushion, or the White Horse Inns ; but if he meets with any success, he must also pay for the fish he takes away. To some persons, this way of obliging a guest seems strange, I can only say it is not more strange than true.

I have found, by long experience, that spinning a Minnow is the most killing way of angling for large Trout, and therefore give the following description of the manner of baiting hooks for this purpose.





**MINNOW BAITED FOR SPINNING.**

Some anglers use two hooks when they bait with a Minnow to spin, others use only one, I shall describe both methods, but give the preference myself to using one hook. First, prepare your gut, swivels and hooks, in the following manner. Take about nine inches of strong single or twisted gut, to which tie a hook, No. 1, about three inches above this hook must be placed another piece of gut, about three inches long, to which you will first tie a hook, No. 8, this short piece of gut is then to be fastened to the nine-inch piece, as before directed, about three inches above the hook No. 1; the hook No. 8 will then reach or hang down to the shank of the aforesaid hook No. 1, to this nine-inch piece of gut add another of the same length, which must be fastened together with small swivels, prepared for the purpose by the fishing-tackle-makers; to those two nine-inch pieces add a third piece fastened as before with swivels, then place a shot on the gut within half an inch of each swivel, and all is complete to receive a Minnow for a bait, which is to be placed on the hooks in the following manner: take the large hook and enter it in the Minnows mouth, carry it through its body,

---

bringing the point and barb of the hook out at the side of the tail ; you then take the small hook, and enter the point of it into the under part of the Minnows chaps, passing it through both lips, the point and barb coming out at the outside of the nose ; now all is ready to loop on to the running line ; when one hook only is used it is always the large size No. 1, enter the point of this hook under the chaps of the Minnow, and bring it out at the outside of its nose, draw the hook and about two inches of gut with it quite through, then take the hook again, and pass it under and over the gut in the Minnow's mouth ; having so done, it will make a half hitch ; now pass the hook through the body of the Minnow, and bring the point and barb out beside the tail ; then draw the gut at the mouth tight, and the hook is baited ; in making the half hitch, you do away the necessity of using a second hook, for this hitch keeps all fast at the bait's mouth ; but it is proper to observe, that in baiting a hook this way, it is best to tie your hook to fine plaited silk, because in making the half hitch knot the gut is liable to break. Another way of baiting with a single hook is as follows : enter the hook, as before described, under the chaps and out at the nose, draw the Minnow up about three inches on the line, then put the hook in its mouth again, and bring it out at the gill ; put the hook again into the Minnow's mouth, and pass it through the body, bringing the point and barb out at the tail ; draw the slack line at the mouth tight ; tie the tail and hook together with white silk, and all is complete. When you use a Minnow baited for spin-

---

ning it will sometimes want a little bending or curving near the tail to make it spin free; this, with attention, the young angler may soon acquire the art of, but it should be noticed, the straiter the Minnow lays on the hook the better, as it appears most natural, yet if it will not spin well it must be bent; always choose a bright Minnow, and one of a middling size, and alive; if from necessity you use a dead one, recollect that unless it is perfectly fresh and sweet, you must not expect to kill a Trout. These hooks, swivels, &c. may be purchased at the principal fishing-tackle shops, ready fitted for the use of such anglers who do not choose to take the trouble, or have not the leisure, to prepare them.

In treating on baits to troll for Jack and Pike, in another part of this work, some objections are made against using artificial baits, but by no means do I feel inclined to oppose the use of the fictitious spinning Minnow in angling for Trout, particularly those made of leather and tinsel, having experienced not only their superiority in turning on the swivel, but also in attracting this fish by the brilliancy of colour, particularly in the strong currents on the tumbling bays, &c. on the river Lea;\* the expense only, I pre-

• That Trout and Salmon are extremely voracious, and are often allured by tinsel, gaudy feathers, (particularly those of the peacock, pheasant, jay, and other birds,) the bright colours of silk, and things which are shining or glittering, the materials commonly used in making artificial flies, baits, &c. fully testify, and of which my experience has furnished me with abundant proofs; but that a Trout, or a Salmon, should swallow a *Diamond Ring*, I must confess myself

**The FISH and the RING, with the EPITAPH, Outside  
the East end of STEPNEY CHURCH.**



Here lieth interred the Body of **DAME REBECCA BERRY**, the Wife  
of **THOMAS ELTON**, of Stratford, Bow,\* Gent. who departed  
this Life, April 26th, 1696, aged 52.

COME Ladies, you that wou'd appear  
Like Angels fair, come dress you here;  
Come, dress you at this Marble Stone,  
And make that humble Grace your own,  
Which once adorn'd as fair a Mind,  
As e'er yet lodg'd in Woman kind.  
So she was dress'd, whose humble Life  
Was free from Pride, was free from Strife,  
Free from all envious Brawls and Jars,  
Of human Life, the civil Wars;  
They ne'er disturb'd her peaceful Mind,  
Which still was gentle, still was kind.  
Her very Looks, her Garb, her Mein,  
Disclos'd the humble Soul within.  
Trace her through every Scene of Life,  
View her as Widow, Virgin, Wife,  
Still the same — she appears,  
The same in Youth, the same in Years,  
The same in low and high Estate,  
Ne'er vex'd with this, nor mov'd with that.  
Go Ladies now, and if you'd be  
As fair, as great, as good as she,  
Go learn of her Humility. }

\* Stratford-le-Bow is in the Hamlet of Stepney.



---

sume, is the chief inducement ever to use a natural bait.

You can spin a Minnow to the greatest advantage from a bridge, or some other eminence: the top of your rod should be somewhat lowered, and the bait kept in the middle of the stream or current. At the tail of a mill, whilst the wheel is turning round, is a likely

somewhat sceptical: that such, however, was the fact, the following romantic tale (told me by an old inhabitant of Stepney) avers.

A gentleman, who resided in Hertfordshire, had gained the affections of a young lady in his neighbourhood; some time after this, he quitted that part of the country, and settled at Stepney, as an India merchant: engaged in the gaiety and dissipation of the metropolis, he soon forgot the young lady he left in Hertfordshire. The extreme distress she felt from this cruel treatment of her lover, induced her to leave the country privately, and go to London in search of the gay deceiver. During an interview with him on the banks of the Thames, he took a diamond ring from his finger, and threw it into the river, solemnly declaring, that, unless she could present him with the same ring, she should never be his bride, and immediately left her. Plunged into the deepest despair by his conduct towards her, and ashamed to return home, she changed her name, and some time after, got hired as a cook-maid in the same merchant's house. Having a Salmon or Trout to dress for dinner on a certain day, to her infinite surprise and delight, she found this identical diamond ring in the fish's belly, and, in consequence, seized this opportunity of making herself known to her master: the result was, that they were soon afterwards happily married. To commemorate this singular circumstance, there is a stone figure of a fish, with a ring in its mouth, an epitaph, and some verses, on the east end of Stepney church, which continues to this day to attract the curiosity and wonder of all visitors.—Such is the story of the Fish and the Ring.

place for Trout, both early and late ; there drop in your bait close to the apron of the mill, and let it swim down some distance, and by playing it awhile, if any Trout are on the feed, be assured they will take you ; there is another and most destructive way of fishing for Trout, called cross-fishing,—see trimmer Angling.

#### REMARKS ON TROUT.

Trout delight most in sharp shallow streams, swimming, and seemingly striving against the stream ; they are also found in such cold waters that therein no other fish can live : they will also live in clean spring ponds, but will not thrive so fast, or breed so well, as in rivers. They spawn in October in most streams, or early in November ; after which they retire into deep still holes, and remain during winter, in the course of which they become very poor, and lose the beautiful spots on their bodies, instead of which, they are much infested with a worm, or water-louse, the head at this season seems much too large, and their whole appearance is far from that of a beautiful fish ; but when the days lengthen, and the sun gets sufficient power to warm and invigorate the elements, then the Trout seems to take a new lease of his life, getting among the gravel in the rapid parts of the streams, and with much hearty rubbing, speedily gets rid of his troublesome and filthy companions, who have so long infested or stuck to him, and soon recovers his former shape and colours.

There are several species of Trout, the flesh of some

---

is a red or pink colour, others yellow or white ; (this white Trout is the Fordige, or Fordich Trout, and lives mostly in the sea ;) the pink is considered the best. However the moderns prize Trout for its delicate flavour, it was not held in any esteem by the ancients, for though they do, and always have abounded in lakes and other waters in the Roman empire, they are mentioned only in praise of their beauty in respect to colour and shape. Trout will live to the age of nine or ten years, and grow to a large size : I heard of one taken some few years since in the river Stour, which runs by Canterbury, and falls into the sea at Sandwich, near Pegwell-bay, that weighed near thirty pounds ; and one was taken this summer (1814,) in the same river, which weighed eighteen pounds ; those were the Fordich Trout. In Ireland, I am credibly informed, there is a species of Trout whose stomachs are as thick as a fowl's gizzard, and this part of the fish is served up alone, and is much prized as a great delicacy. In some of the pools in Wales, the Trout are all crooked in the lower part of the body. Another remarkable trait is found among Trout, which is not noticed of any other fish, namely barren females ; but though this female does not conduce to replenish the waters, yet she is always fat, and fit for the table. The female is known by having a smaller head than the male ; when well fed and in season, Trout is only inferior to Salmon, by being something less juicy or fat.



BAIT FOR TROUT, AND THE SEASON TO USE  
THEM.

During the early part of spring, Worms and live Minnows ; for the remainder of the season, flies, natural and artificial. I have taken several fine Trout in the deep waters of tumbling bays on the river Lea with greaves, and also with the pith of the neck or spine of an ox ; this has occurred generally latter end of April while fishing for Chub. There are small double gorge hooks made for trolling or roving for Trout or Perch, but I have had most success with the single hook leaded on the shank, therefore have given a cut of it.—Note. When you bait with a Minnow, either to spin, troll, or rove, it is adviseable to tie the part just above the tail with a turn or two of fine white silk or thread to keep the hook that is in the bait fast, and in a proper position.



---

## CHAP. XVI.

### CRUCIAN OR PRUSSIAN CARP.

THIS fish is not very common in England. By some persons it is supposed to be a cross breed, between the Carp and Roach, as it favours both in appearance, the scales and head resembling the Carp, the fins and flat body the Roach; it is a poor bony fish, the flesh soft and insipid: the Crucian Carp seldom exceed a pound weight. They are very prolific, for which reason they are useful in ponds, as food for the Jack and Pike, and large Eels are also fond of them; you may bait trimmers, night-lines, and hooks, with the Crucians, to lay in ponds, moats, pits or canals, with success, but I never found them good bait in a river. These fish breed, and are very numerous in many ponds round London, particularly in those on Clapham and Wandsworth commons; also in a pond on Hertford heath, near the East India College they are very numerous, and in the pond close to the road, Lower Edmonton, on the green, and in the largest pond on Clapton common, near the Swan, all free waters to angle in; they begin to feed in April, and continue until Michaelmas. You may take them either with a red worm, gentle, or paste, being a hungry bold biting fish, and will take a bait at any time of the day; use a gut or horse hair line, with a No. 11 or 12 hook, and fish at or near the bottom: chewed bread is good ground bait for Crucian or Prussian Carp; they will sometimes take the bait on the surface of the water, or a few inches below between weeds.

## REMARKS ON THE PRUSSIAN CARP.

The Prussian, or Crucian Carp, were introduced into this country, about a hundred years since, from the North of Germany. They differ very much from the common Carp, being much flatter and thinner in the body, their scales are also more of a silvery, than a golden hue, and they want the barbs, or wattles, at the nose ; they breed, and thrive wonderfully, in new made pits, from whence gravel has been dug, or in ponds with gravelly sides or bottom ; these Carp will live a long time in a glass bowl, or globe, and look very beautiful, if the water is frequently changed. Put a little small gravel in it occasionally, with crumbs of bread, gentils, small red worms, or blood worms.



## CHAP. XVII.



## LOACH, OR STONE LOACH.

THIS is a very small fish without scales, has a round body, with six whattels or barbs at its mouth, like the Barbel ; it seldom exceeds four or five inches in length, in colour, mouth, head, and fins, it somewhat resembles the Gudgeon. I have heard they are a delicious fish when fried in batter, or with egg and crumbs of bread ; but there is some difficulty in catching a dish of them, being scarce as well as small. The Stone-loach is an excellent, indeed a most killing bait for large Eels, used on night lines ; they are generally to be found in small gravelly brooks and rivulets—I have sometimes taken a few in the river Lea, in the shallows, near mill-tails : they lie at the bottom, routing the gravel, the same as Barbel. You may take them with the tail end of a red worm, and a small hook, during the warm weather, with or without a float to your line, using a shot or two to sink the bait.

## THE PRICKLEBACK, OR STICKLEBACK,

is the smallest of the finny tribe ; they are sometimes used as a bait in fishing for Perch : in this case you

---

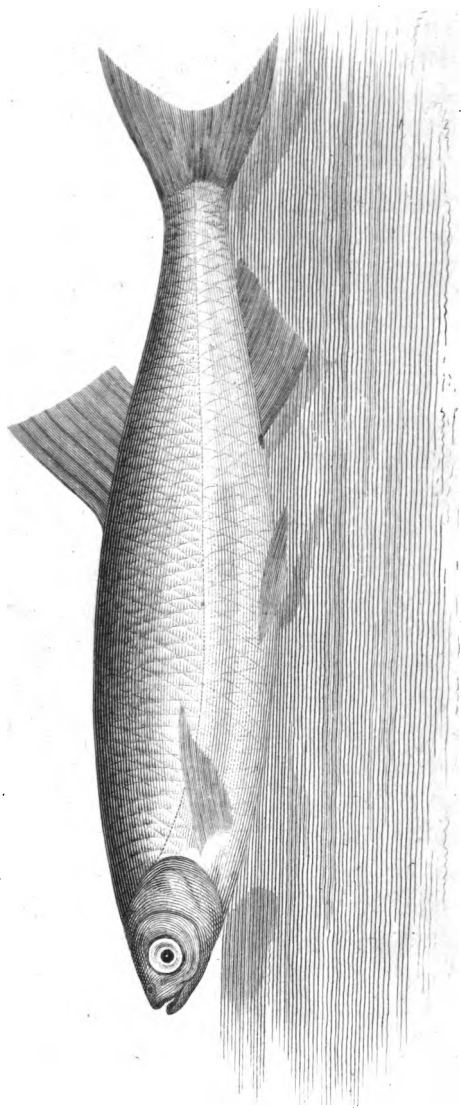
must cut off the prickly fin on the back. They are caught in all the ditches and ponds round London, with a small piece of worm, either with or without a hook ; a small piece of worm, tied to a yard of thread, and that fastened to a stick, is sufficient for the purpose.

#### REMARKS ON THE PRICKLEBACK.

The Prickleback receives its name from the sharp spines or prickles on its back, they seldom grow to the length of two inches, and are short lived ; but they are a very bold and voracious fish, attacking Roach and Dace, twice their size, and destroying very small fish, and the spawn of fish ; they breed fast, producing immense numbers, therefore those who have fish ponds, should take great care the Prickleback gets not a habitation therein. The Prickleback is frequently used in Lincolnshire for manure, they are always very numerous in the fens ; but sometimes they become so numerous as to make it necessary to separate and find new situations, which happens once in eight years, upon an average ; during which migration, part of the river Welland is almost choked with them, they are then collected or caught, in nets, seives, baskets, &c. to the amount of cart loads, and spread on the land as manure, and I am informed fertilize it extremely. Pricklebacks are also found in the sea ; they are good food for poultry, who are very fond of them. The Prickleback produces the same effect on fowls as Sprats, of which they are also very fond, namely, increasing their fecundity and size.



# BLEAK.



C. Hardy delin.

R. Carpenter Sculp.

---

---

**CHAP. XVII.****DIRECTIONS HOW TO ANGLE FOR AND TAKE THE  
ALBURNAS BLEY, OR BLEAK.**

**BLEAK** are found in the rivers Thames, Lea, and the New River, in immense numbers; they are a handsome fish, but do not grow to a large size, seldom exceeding two ounces in weight, and not much valued for their flavour: they are a lively sportive fish, and easily taken with a small fly at the top of the water, by whipping or dapping, and with paste or gentles at mid-water, or at the bottom. Angle for them with a light rod, single hair line, small quill float, and No. 12 or 13 hook. They will bite all day from April till October, affording the young angler sport and practice: these may be caught in all parts of the New River from Sadler's Wells to Ware. A handful of road dust, or small gravel, a few gentles, crumbs of bread, or chewed bread, thrown in the water, now and then for ground bait, will bring the Bleak about your bait.

**REMARKS ON BLEAK.**

The bleak is a handsome formed fish, with a bright green back, and brilliant silvery scales on the sides,



and has a fine eye, altogether much like a fresh-caught sprat; they spawn about the middle of March, but soon recover themselves. The Bleak is not much prized at table, from their small size, and tasting somewhat bitter, which happens only in the Midsummer months: in Spring, and the Autumn, many persons who like small fish fried, think the Bleak well tasted, and prefer them to Roach or Dace. In summer Bleak are much distressed by an insect called a hair worm, they then swim on the surface, and are called mad bleak.

#### BAITS FOR BLEAK, AND WHEN TO USE THEM.

By using a single gentle, put on a No. 13 hook, hair line, and very small float, and angling about a foot below the surface of the water, is the best way for killing Bleak; when you use a fly let it be a live house fly.



## CHAP. XIX.



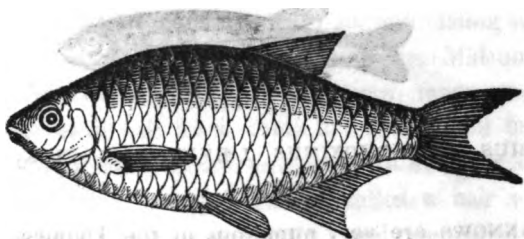
VARIUS SEU PHOXINUS LEVIS, THE PINK, OR  
MINNOW.

MINNOWS are very numerous in the Thames, Lea, and New River. They are a very small fish, and little valued by the angler excepting for baits, for Trout, Perch, or Chub; the Minnow bites very freely at a blood worm, a small piece of red worm, gentles, or paste—the tackle should be very light, and a No. 13 hook: they are taken all day from March till winter, on the gravelly shallows or swims, also at the mouth of ditches, that fall into rivers, and at mill-tails.

## REMARKS ON MINNOWS.

In size, the Minnow seldom exceeds three inches, it is a handsome fish in shape and colour, when quite in season. The back is of a dark colour, the sides of a golden hue, much like the Tench, and the belly white, without scales. They spawn in April. Minnows do not feed in the night, fearing to stir at that season, as their great enemies, the Trout and Perch, are in search of them, in preference to any other food: neither does the Minnow love cold boisterous weather: at such times it is losing time to angle for them. They are said to eat well if fried, when made into cakes with crumbs of bread and eggs.

## CHAP. XX.

**DIRECTIONS HOW TO ANGLE FOR AND TAKE THE  
CYPRINUS LATUS, OR BREAM.**

THE Bream is a very bony fish, and of little worth : they are not very numerous, either in the river Thames or Lea, but abound in the Trent, Wey, Byfleet, and the Mole rivers, also in Dagenham-breach, and formerly in the dock called Perry's dock, at Blackwall. They are more frequently taken in the Spring, during March, April, and May, than at any other time, when angling for Carp with red worms. Use a gut-line, No. 10 hook, and running-tackle ; ground-bait with greaves, bran, clay, or chopped worms, and let the bait drag an inch on the ground : fish early in the morning, and very late at night. Bream seldom bite in the middle of the day, during the summer months, unless it rains, when they will take a bait freely. They are also caught with the leger-line, similar to Barbel, or with dead lines and trimmers.

## REMARKS ON BREAM.

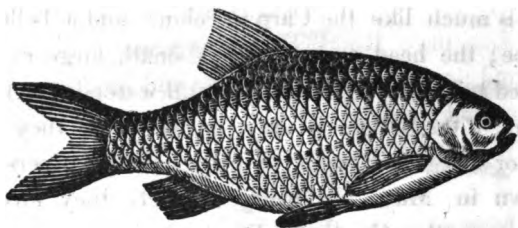
The Bream is a very broad fish, with large scales, and is much like the Carp in colour, and a bellows in shape; the head and mouth is small, large eye, and forked tail; they will breed in still waters as well as in rivers, if the bottom is clay, or loamy, as they prefer still or sluggish streams to large or rapid rivers: they spawn in May. In every respect, they love such places as the Carp and Tench do in rivers, namely, dark still holes, deep eddies, and quiet retired places; they will take the same baits, and, like the Carp, struggle hard, particularly when they first feel the hook, therefore give line freely before you attempt to turn them if a heavy fish.

## BAITS FOR BREAM, AND THE SEASONS TO USE THEM.

Red worms and blood worms are an excellent bait for Bream during the spring; in summer use gentles and paste, and occasionally worms.



## CHAP. XXI.



## THE NERSLING, OR RUDD.

The Rudd, a kind of Roach, all tinged with gold,  
Strong, broad, and thick, most lovely to behold.

M. BROWN.

THE Rudd is a very indifferent fish for the table, as the flesh is soft, and full of bones; in shape and colour it is much like the Roach, but broader; the body and gills are tinged and bronzed with gold; the belly, fins, and tail are a bright red, or vermilion, the eye more yellow than Roach. They thrive best in ponds, but seldom exceed a pound in weight; they will take red worms, paste, and gentles during summer: use a gut or hair-line, quill float, No. 11 or 12 hook, and angle at bottom; in every respect, act the same as when fishing for Roach or Dace.

It is generally supposed that the Rudd is bred between the Bream and Roach. Roach, Rudd, and

Bream are certainly very much alike : the Rudd spawn about April, and thrive best in ponds or still waters, with gravelly bottoms, but get poor, and full of green insects, in filthy or muddy ponds. The river Thames and Lea have Rudd, but not in great numbers : they abound in Dagenham-breach, and in the ponds in Wanstead Park.

REMARKS ON RUDD.

I have no doubt that the fish called a Rudd is a true Roach, but a little altered in shape, &c. by being put into ponds not congenial to their habits and nature, for I have known ponds stocked with Roach from rivers, and in a few years none were to be found, but numerous Rudd. Previous to the Roach being put into the same pond, a Rudd was never seen, neither were there any Bream. This fact I have witnessed many times, particularly during the twenty years I have angled in the ponds in Tilney Park, Wanstead. I have also caught Roach in rivers, when out of season, and when in a sickly state, extremely like the pond Rudd, which makes me conclude that they are really Roach, though degenerated.

BAITS FOR RUDD, AND THE SEASON TO USE THEM.

In the spring use blood worms, red worms, and gentles ; the rest of the season gentles and paste,

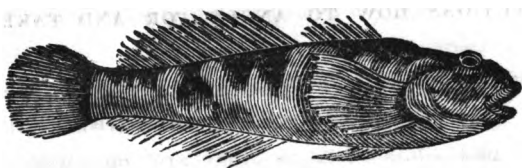
## CHAP. XXII.

## POPE OR RUFF.

THE Pope or Ruff is much like the Perch in its habits, form and flavour, being firm and well-tasted though they never grow so large ; they are taken with worms and gentles, but are rarely to be met with in the vicinity of London,\* except in the little river Mole. There are many in the Isis, near Oxford, the river Cam, near Cambridge, also in the Trent, and great numbers in the river Yare in Norfolk. Put two No. 9 hooks on the line, and fish within a foot of the bottom : they bite from March till September, and spawn sometimes in April ; but seldom grow to the length of seven inches, they delight in quick gravelly eddies, and about wharfings. The best bait is red worms, ground-bait with handfuls of small gravel or road-sand thrown gently in occasionally at the spot you are fishing.

\* I have caught a few at Shepperton, on the shallows close to the ferry-boat, while angling for Gudgeons with a No. 10 hook, baited with a small red worm ; fishing near the bottom I find more successful than in using two ; if two are used, let the bottom one be No. 9, and gently touch the bottom, the other No. 10, and so fixed on the line as to be about nine or ten inches above,

## CHAP. XXIII.



GOBIO FLUVIATILIS, THE BULL-HEAD, OR MILLER'S  
THUMB.

THIS is a most singular formed fish, without scales, and different altogether from any other fresh-water fish I am acquainted with; the head is very large and flat, resembling a toad, the mouth very wide, the eye large and projecting, the body and tail are of a dusky brown colour, and waved or spotted like a Gudgeon; they seldom exceed five or six inches in length: they delight to lie on stones at the bottom of shallow rivers, in hot weather, where you may catch them with a small piece of red worm put on a little hook, with a shot to sink the bait, which they will very readily take, without betraying any fear; therefore any short line and rod does for this sport. There are a great many Bull-heads or Miller's-thumbs, in the New River. I have known more than seven dozen taken in a day out of this river, near Ware. Some persons eat them fried, after having the head cut off, and speak of the dish with applause. They will answer for baiting a night-line for Eels (but they should be alive) when other small fish are not to be procured. They spawn in May.



## CHAP. XXIV.

DIRECTIONS HOW TO ANGLE FOR AND TAKE THE  
ANGUILLA, OR EEL.

The Silver Eel in shining volumes roll'd.

EELS are found in all rivers, canals, and ponds near London in great numbers, and remarkably fine: they are taken with rod and line, and with night lines, dead lines, and bobbing, also with the spear, and by snig-gling.

Gut or twisted hair lines, with a float, and No. 9 or 10 hook, should be used when fishing with a rod; bait with a marsh or red worm, and fish at the bottom.

The most convenient way of fishing with the dead line, is to use the bank runner, with a whipcord line, on which you may put five or six hooks, about nine inches apart. The night line is much stronger, and should be baited with small fish, or lob worms, which I shall fully describe hereafter.

Bobbing for Eels is practised in a boat, with a large bunch of worms suspended by a strong cord from a pole or stout rod, in the following manner: first of all, you must procure a large quantity of worms, (marsh worms are best, though lob worms will do,) and string them on worsted, or coarse thread, by passing a needle through

---

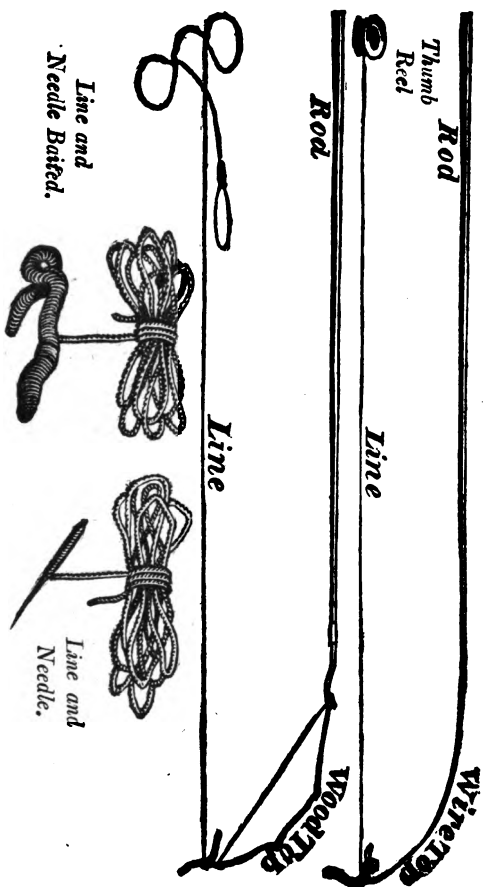
them from head to tail, until you have as many strung as will form a bunch as large as a good sized turnip, then fasten them on the line so that all the ends may hang level. In the middle is placed a piece of lead, of a conical or bell form, the broad end downwards, which may be got at any of the fishing-tackle shops, made for the purpose; thus prepared, cast the baits into the water gently, let them sink to the bottom, and then keep raising them a few inches from the ground, and dropping them again, until you have a bite, which is easily perceived, as the Eel tugs very strongly: be as expert as possible, and at the same time steady, in raising your line, so that your fish, in dropping off, may fall into the boat. Immense numbers are taken by this method. During the hot weather, always fish or bob in shoal, or rather shallow water, and out of the stream, during the night most are taken, but they will lay hold freely in the day time. Rivers in which the tide flows afford the best success, particularly during ebb-tide.

#### SPEARING AND SNIGGLING OR BROGLING FOR EELS.

By sniggling, many good Eels are taken in the river Lea, and various streams about the metropolis, during the summer months; they are also taken by spearing, which is done by striking or jobbing the spear into weeds or muddy and soft sandy bottoms of rivers, ponds, and ditches, many fine Eels are procured by this method: those spears are sold at all the fishing tackle shops, and are known by the name of Eel-spears.

The art of sniggling is somewhat difficult to describe, yet as it is a most valuable, and indeed the only way, that can be practised in the day time to take large Eels by baits, I shall bestow every pains to explain the method pursued in sniggling, and illustrate the same, with cuts, representing the needle, line, &c. employed in this species of fishing. In place of a hook, a stout needle is used, that kind with which tailors stitch button holes, and the small needle used by sail-makers are the best, they should not exceed two inches in length ; before you use them, break off about the eighth of an inch of the point, which strengthens the needle, and still leaves it sufficiently sharp for the purpose of sniggling. About three yards of whip-cord, wound on a thumb-winder, is sufficient for the line, but the same quantity of stout plaited silk, such as is used in trolling for Pike is far superior : for a rod, a branch of willow or hazel, near three yards long is generally used ; the small end being bent nearly to a half circle, and confined to that shape, by tying a string near the point, and fastening the other end of it near the middle of the rod : A friend of mine has much improved the rod, by using about half a yard of stout bell-wire, either of copper, brass, or iron, for the bend or circle at the top, which does away entirely the necessity of tying across with string, and this wire also passes through the water, with less resistance than wood, and you can have a fine point to the wire, consequently you are not so liable to injure the worm, when conveying it to the hole. You can bend the wire top to the shape most proper to con-

## SNIGGLING APPARATUS.



*Note*.—The above cuts of snigglng-rods, &c. are the most simple apparatus for taking Eels by snigglng: in respect to tops for snigglng-rods, some anglers use them made of hickory, about sixteen inches long, which consists of three pieces joined together, with two neat brass hinges, (similar to those used in making folding rules) by the aid of those hinges these tops may be formed or bent to any shape, most likely to enable the angler to place the worm where an Eel is suspected to lay. This top is very convenient to carry, for when folded up, it will lay in your pocket tackle-book. Those who use these folding tops have them made to fit in the second top joint of their general fishing-rod, so that the same rod can be used for every kind of angling, except whipping with flies. Those who prefer the wire for snigglng-tops, may conveniently carry a length or two in the butt of their rods. I have killed many Eels by snigglng, using my walking stick for the rod, after tying to the thin end of it about half a yard of the said stout bell-wire; to prevent the wire lacerating the worm too much while conducting it in search of an Eel, it should be blunted, or tie a silk or thread round the point end, which will prevent it penetrating too far in or destroying your worm. A little experience in snigglng will enable the angler to select which he thinks the best among those toys enumerated above.



---

vey your bait to a hole which is often wanted when sniggling from the difficulty of getting near the place where an Eel is thought to be.

#### HOW TO TIE ON THE NEEDLE AND BAIT IT.

To whip or tie the needle to the line is done with some silk, waxed with shoe-makers wax, first laying the end of the line, nearly half-way down the needle, within a quarter of an inch of the eye or thick end, and tying it strongly on, the line will then hang from about the middle of the needle, leaving the smaller end quite bare, and also a quarter of an inch of the larger; in baiting the needle, enter the thick end thereof into the worm,\* near the tail, and carry it down near to the head, then draw the worm as much back as will completely cover the needle, the line will then hang from the tail, and the head will be presented to the Eel. The best rod for sniggling is about two yards of light stiff bamboo, to the top of which tie about half a yard of wire as before described, which you can readily bend to the shape most convenient, for carrying the bait to any place you wish. Some snigglers put the needle into the worm near the head, so that the tail is presented to the Eel, which, from its moving or twisting about, they think is more likely to entice the Eel to bite. Instead

\* The worms proper for sniggling, are tough and well scoured lob worms, or very large marsh worms, equally tough and well scoured, for those large Eels will seldom take a worm that is just dug from the earth; and, besides, if not well scoured, the worm is apt to break.

of a needle I have frequently used a small Eel hook in sniggling, and with good success.

**PLACES WHERE LARGE EELS LIE, AND THE WAY  
TO TAKE THEM.**

During the summer months, beginning with June, the water in rivers, lakes, ponds, ditches, &c. decreases very much, then is the time to expect sport by sniggling; for at such times Eels lie in holes in the banks of rivers, and other waters, not far below the surface, and between the planks of wharfings, the boards that form the aprons of mill-tails, and between any planks and boards about wooden bridges, and flood gates, under and between large stones about mill-pools, and also in ditches which are nearly dry, and have communication with rivers and streams. The places in the banks, proper to offer a bait at, may be known by observing holes, some nearly as large as rat holes, and some smaller: while sniggling, present your bait to every hole and crevice you meet with, a little below the surface of the water; sometimes, after you have hooked an Eel, it will prove too large to be pulled out, recourse is then had to digging him out if in a bank; if between boards or planks, it is often found necessary to saw or force asunder those obstructions. Having met with a place likely to contain an Eel, bait the needle as before directed, hold it in your left hand, and fix the point of the wire or the point of the bent rod lightly into the worm at the tail end, and convey the head end of the worm just within the hole or crevice,

where you suspect an Eel lies, (all the while holding the line in your left hand, loosening as much as is necessary to let the bait reach the said hole or crevice,) hold your bait still a few minutes, and if the Eel is inclined to take it, you will feel him dragging the worm further in the hole:\* do not check it, but give him two minutes or more to gorge, then strike smartly, and you will fix the needle across his stomach or throat. Do not pull, but only hold the line tight, and they generally soon make their appearance—you will then of course lift the Eel out, and secure him in your bag or basket. The same method must be pursued if a hook is used instead of a needle.

#### OBSERVATIONS ON EELS.

Eels live many years, and grow to a very large size, even to measure a yard and a half in length, and weighing more than fifteen pounds: they are fond of water with a muddy or sandy bottom, but yet they do not love muddy water; and if in a river, they prefer the still parts, lying under large chalk-stones, and stumps or roots of trees, between piles, planking, or in holes in the banks, from which they seldom move during the day. In winter they coil themselves up, and lie in

\* When the Eel takes hold of your worm, it immediately slips off the rod, which, as before observed, is only made use of to convey the bait to the place where you expect to find an Eel. This which is called a *bite* in other modes of angling, is in this case called a *take-off*, from the Eel taking or slipping the worm off the point of the rod.

H



numbers together, buried in the mud and sand, in a torpid state, until the spring.\* So tenacious are Eels of life, that they will live many days out of water and without food, until they are almost putrid and become offensive to the olfactory nerve.

It is well authenticated, that Eels will quit their own element and wander over meadows, during the night-season, either in search of food, or, what is more probable, to change their habitation, which satisfactorily accounts for the appearance of Eels in ponds, and other waters, where none had before existed. When in ponds, that do not afford many small fish for their regular sustenance, they will attack and devour young ducks, mice, rats, and any small animal that they can possibly get hold of; and I have known them snap at birds that came to drink when the water was low, in the summer season. When very small, (about two inches in length,) the young Eels move by thousands from one part of the river Lea to another, always working up the stream; this takes place in the month of June, a circumstance which, I suppose, most anglers must have observed. How Eels propagate, is a matter

\* Eels take the advantage of autumnal floods to escape from rivers into the sea; those floods enables them to pass particularly from the River Lea, as at these times the flood-gates, locks, &c. are opened to let the water pass into the Thames, and from thence to the Sea. During these floods, very long nets, made for the purpose, are fastened to mill tails, the gates of tumbling bays, &c. on the Lea, for the purpose of catching Eels, and frequently from one to two hundred weight of fine Eels are taken.

far from being settled among the theoretical writers on natural history: some conceive that they are viviparous,--others, oviparous,--others, again, think they couple, and discharge a viscosity in the mud of rivers and ponds, which produces innumerable young; but as no parts of generation are to be found in them, neither any roe, all is darkness and conjecture with them on the subject.\*

\* I am quite satisfied myself that Eels are viviparous, having paid much attention to the subject for several years, during which time numerous instances of it have come immediately under my own observation; and I have received many communications corroborative of the fact from several respectable anglers and other persons, who are proprietors, &c. of fisheries. BOWLER, in his Treatise on Angling, mentions a circumstance of a miller's wife, who informed him that she had several times found small Eels in the belly of large ones, when she was preparing or cleansing them to dress; that once she took ten or twelve out, and placed them on the table, and they all moved about: in size, she said, they were about the bigness of a fine needle. Those which I have examined have had their young in the gut or stomach, close to the vent. I have found these small Eels in the Silver Eel early in the summer, and in the black or dark Eel in September, which proves that these Eels produce their like. At different periods I have met with these young Eels in the larger, some very lively, about two inches in length, and of the thickness of a single horse-hair line, and when put in a tumbler of water, they have swum about, and appeared, in every respect, perfectly formed, and in all probability capable of providing for themselves: being of this opinion, after having kept them several hours in a glass of water, I then put them into the river, where they swam strongly into the weeds, &c. The last Eel which I examined was at the Crown, at Broadbourn-bridge, in August, 1814, on opening an Eel (which was of the black species) I found but one young one in the stomach or gut, but about a teaspoonful of a white substance, like coarse white thread or cotton,

There are four sorts of Eels generally met with in the Thames and Lea, the white-bellied, or silver Eel, the black-backed Eel, the head of which is much flatter than any other of the Eel species; the mouth is also larger, and has much the appearance of a duck's mouth or

which I conceive contained small Eels, not perfectly formed, and too minute to be seen with the naked eye, as this species does not cast its young till Michaelmas, or after. The one which I took out was quite perfect, and when put into the water, it immediately swam about. Several persons saw it; among others, a Mr. BOYD, a lover of angling, who happened to call in at the time: after some few hours, I threw the little animal into the river, and he swam off as lively as a Grig. Several bargemen, and others, have seen Eels in this river in the act of copulation, in the summer months, near the surface of the water among large weeds. Sometimes very small Eels are found sticking to piles, posts, &c. above the water; this occurs when they are sickly, and unable to move, when the water falls, they perish immediately.

In respect to Eels being migratory, I have never met with any circumstance, during my experience as an angler, either to strengthen or destroy that opinion. A gentleman, who lived near West-End, Hampstead, having a large pond on his premises, informed me, that as he was walking one evening through the meadow in which the pond was, he was surprised at some rustling in the grass near his feet. On looking, he thought it was a snake, but found it to be an Eel, making fast to the pond, from which it was at the distance of about a hundred yards: he secured it, and it was a fine dark Eel, near a pound weight. Several other cases of a similar nature I have been informed of by persons whose veracity I cannot doubt. In the course of my angling excursions, I have several times seen snakes swim across a small piece of water, and also across the New River; but they always seemed distressed in the watery element, and swam with their heads some inches above the surface, therefore easily distinguished from Eels. Some anglers have thought those snakes might be mistaken for Eels.

beak. There is also the short Eel or Grig, and the clear bright Eel, whose fins are of a red or crimson colour, all excellent food when fresh caught out of rivers. The Eel feeds on the river periwinkle or snail, on worms, and all kinds of small fish, or any animal substance it meets with, alive or dead.

The best time to fish for them, in the day, is during soft showry, and hot gloomy weather, and after a night of thunder and lightning, &c. When you have caught an Eel, put your foot on it, and sever the back bone near the head with a knife, which completely disables him—you may then keep the line clear till you have unhooked him, for they are covered with a slimy substance, which prevents your holding them, and unless speedily disabled by cutting, as above, they entangle the line in endless confusion. The month of May is the best month in the year for catching Eels, from morning till night, and all night. Large Eels, especially those caught in rivers, are considered nutritious food, but at the same time, are known to be hard of digestion, therefore those who attend to their health as well as gratifying their palate, should be careful that this fish is well dressed, or thoroughly done, before it is eaten, to effect which they should be parboiled before they are spit chucked, (commonly called pitch cocked) fried or boiled.



## CHAP. XXV.

## THE CONGER, OR SEA EEL.

The Conger Eel grows to a vast size. Mr. Pennant says, he has heard of Congers being taken at Scarborough more than ten feet long, and eighteen inches in circumference. They are also taken in Mount's Bay, near Plymouth, weighing one hundred pounds. They are often dressed by stewing, and sold by pennyworths, in the streets at Plymouth, to those who can relish them; but, from their black skin, and the floating oily fat on the top of the liquor, strangers generally feel disgust. Innumerable of their brood come up the Severn in April, preceeding the Shads, who also migrate into that river about this time, and it is generally thought to feed on the Conger fry, called Elvers; these Elvers swarm during the season, and are taken (a bushel or two during one tide) in hair sieves fastened to a long pole, while the tide is flowing into the river. They make good pies, or are very good eating when fried in batter, into masses or cakes. At some places and seasons they are caught in such quantities as to be used as manure. Conger Eels are caught near rocks and shores of the sea, by lines and hooks fastened to a strong line or rope, about a yard apart: they are very strong, and often endanger the fisherman when taken into the boat, by jumping and twisting about his legs, &c. sometimes dragging him overboard; to prevent which, and other accidents, he often kills them immediately.

---

The Conger is in make much like the fresh-water Eel, but its eyes are larger, and of a silver hue, and it has also a membraneous fin running all down the back: at the nose or ~~snout~~ it has two tubes or horns. The body of the smaller Congers is of a much lighter colour than other Eels, and also the flesh, which, when cut into collops and fried, is by ~~many~~ considered wholesome and palatable food. The flesh of the Conger was in high estimation with the ancients.



## CHAP. XXVI.



## LAMPREY EEL.

THE Lamprey Eel is of the shape of the Lamprey or Seven Eyes, but of a much larger size, being taken sometimes nearly three feet long ; the skin is of a blackish colour, and full of lightish spots ; it has no bones, but it has a gristle down the back. They come from the sea to spawn in fresh water rivers, in the month of March, and deposit their spawn in holes made in a gravelly, sandy bottom. In the month of April, after leaving their spawn safely, they quit the fresh waters again for the sea : in about three months the spawn becomes a brood of Lampreys, about four or five inches long. The Lamprey Eel is frequently caught in the river Severn, near Gloucester, while angling for Gudgeons, Perch, Flounders, &c. with a worm.

## THE LAMPREY, LAMPERN, OR SEVEN EYES.

This fish is about a foot long, the back is dark, and belly white, much resembling the silver Eel : they have seven holes, like shot holes, on each side of the head. They are found in the Thames about Brentford, Richmond, and other places, in March and April, when they are in the best state, but they are not considered wholesome food ; they have no bones in their bodies,

not even a back bone, but in its place, a sort of gristly substance. The Lamprey is a most killing bait for Eels, put on a night line or trimmer, in pieces about an inch and a half long: they are sometimes caught by the angler in the Thames, and other large rivers, that have a communication with the sea, (to which the Lamprey more properly belongs) in the spring, when fishing with a worm; but they are never angled for purposely in any place that I am acquainted with. After spawning they hasten again to the sea, leaving their brood in the sand or gravel of rivers. This fish, Pliny informs us, will live sixty years, and may be trained so as to become quite tame: the Roman ladies used to keep them as pets, and hang jewels and ear-rings to their gills. Hor-tensius, the orator, also kept a tame one, and wept at its death.

Naturalists reckon eight species of Lampreys, but three only are noticed in general by anglers, viz. the Lamprey or Seven Eyes, the Blind Lamprey, and the Lamprey Eel. The Blind Lamprey is very small, not larger than a lob-worm; the body is divided into rings, like worms, its mouth is round and open, but it has neither teeth nor tongue: it has a hole on the head, and seven on each side. This Lamprey is only valuable as a bait for Eels, laid as night lines. Lampreys may be bought of the Thames Fishermen, at the Spotted Dog public-house, Strand-Lane, in the Strand, and are certainly the best bait for Eels laid with lines at night in some parts of the Lea, say within ten miles of London.



## CHAP. XXVII.

DIRECTIONS HOW TO ANGLE FOR AND TAKE THE  
FLUKE, OR FLOUNDER, AND SMELT.

THE Flounder is only found in rivers where the tide flows, or those which have connection with the sea, as they are properly a sea fish, and only leave it to spawn: they are generally considered a very sweet fish, light and easy of digestion. In the creeks from Blackwall to Bromley, Stratford, and West-Ham, also in the docks, and the canal at Limehouse, and in the other docks, &c. on the opposite side of the river, they are taken either with dead lines or floated, in the same manner as Eels; in fact, when you angle for Eels in this part, you angle for Flounders also, as they will both take the same baits, and at the same season: it also frequently happens that you take both Flounders and Eels promiscuously, when fishing for Eels with a floated line, on which you may put two or three hooks, about nine inches above each other.—See fishing for Eels with a floated line.

Flounders are also caught by jobbing a spear into the mud and sand where they frequent, those spears are sold at the fishing tackle shops, by the name of flounder spears.

The colour of the Flounder is generally a dark mottled olive: they spawn in March, and are in season until winter. Those caught in the river Thames are very sweet and firm, and I think superior to any that are

---

brought to market from the sea. They delight to lie among sand, gravelly banks, and bottoms: they will likewise thrive in clean gravelly ponds, particularly if a stream runs through it.

#### SMELTS.

are well known as a most delicious fish for the table: they are of an elegant shape, and covered with loose white scales; the back is of a dark hue, but the sides and belly are almost transparent, and shine like silver; the eyes have also the same silvery appearance; their jaws and tongue have many teeth, and very large for so small a fish. Though they arrive twice every year in the Thames, that is, in March and July, yet they do not get above London Bridge during their last visit. When they first arrive, if the season is favourable for the fishermen to work their nets, they take an immense quantity of them at the above place, which enables the poor fisherman to discharge some of the debts he unavoidably contracts in winter. Between London bridge and Lambeth, is the principal place for taking Smelts in nets during the spring.

Smelts are caught by angling in the following manner: you must have an exceeding stiff and strong top to your rod, strong gut line, heavy float, and from ten to twelve hooks, about eight or nine inches apart—the hooks will stand better from the line if tied on a fine bristle. Use No. 9 hooks; the best baits are a small piece of an Eel, or pieces of a Smelt, the bottom hook

touching the ground. Note, when they bite they throw the float up, all other fish pull it down. Smelts will sometimes take blood worms, Shrimps or pieces of Lobsters, &c. and also red worms.

They are sometimes fished for without a float, but with hooks, lines, &c. as above described, and with a small piece of lead at bottom, which you let dip, or touch the ground, gently raising and sinking it till you feel a bite: this is called dip-fishing, from the name of the lead, (which may be procured at the tackle-shops,) and is the most destructive way of killing Smelts. You always find Smelts in deep water, therefore a long line is necessary. The best place to catch these fish, near London, is in the canal that runs from Limehouse-hole to Blackwall, through the Isle of Dogs: they are also frequently taken off the logs lying in the Thames, and in all the wet-docks below London-bridge. You may fish for Smelts from July to November and December—very early and late is the most successful time: many will take twenty dozen in a day.

From its peculiar smell, which greatly resembles that of a cucumber, this delicate fish takes its name in this country, but in Germany it is known by the name of the *Stink-fisck*. They spawn the latter end of March, and again about August, immediately afterwards they go towards the sea: they are generally about seven inches long, but will grow to the weight of nearly half a pound.

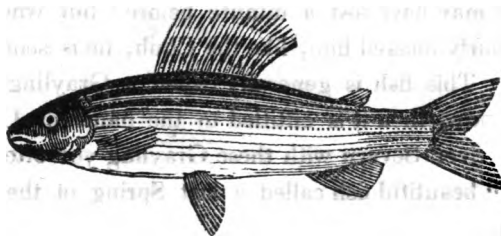
## DEAD LINES.

A great many Eels, Flounders, &c. are taken with dead lines, between Blackwall and Old Ford, in the several creeks round Bromley, West-Ham, Abbey-Mills, and Stratford, where the tide flows from the river Thames. The dead-line is made of whipcord, generally about six yards in length, to which is affixed five or six hooks, which should be tied on pieces of bristle, twisted hair, or gut, not more than four inches long, with a loop at the end: No. 9 is the hook generally chosen for this purpose. Loop the hooks on the line (beginning at the bottom) about a foot apart; close to every hook put a large shot, or piece of lead, to keep the bait on the ground, as every hook must lie at the bottom, for which purpose you should throw sufficient length of line into the water. Flounders and Eels seldom take a bait unless it lies on the ground: the best bait is a red worm; indeed no other bait than worms is likely to succeed. Fishing in this way, you may use half a dozen lines at a time, by casting them in a few yards from each other, and tying the line to a weed, or a small stick stuck in the ground or bank. It is necessary to have a short rod with you, three or four yards long, to the top of which is fixed a small iron crutch or fork, in shape like the letter Y; with this rod you take up the lines in the following manner: take the line in your left hand, and with the right pass the crutch or fork under the line, pushing it forward in the water some distance, by which means you can easily lift out

your line over weeds, or any other impediment. Without this rod or crutch you would be compelled to drag the lines up the side or bank, where the hooks would catch the weeds, &c. and spoil the baits, and occasion you infinite trouble. It is astonishing how great a number of Flounders, Eels, Perch, Roach, Dace, and Gudgeons are caught by this method of fishing in those creeks I have named, especially from an hour after high water, until the tide is quite run out: you may begin to use dead lines in the latter end of February, and meet with success until November, day and night.



## CHAP. XXVIII.



THE GRAYLING, OR UMBER.

THE Grayling, or Umber, is not to be met with in the rivers about London, but abound in the Severn, the Wye, and the Humber; the nearest I have found them in is at Salisbury: they delight in rapid streams, and so swift are their movements, that the Roman poet Decius Ausonius says of them,

*The Umbra swift, escapes the quickest eye.*

This fish spawns the latter end of May, and they seldom exceed a pound in weight; the head, gills, and back are black, but the belly is handsomely dappled with spots; the back fin is very large, and regularly spotted or waved with dark brown, and stands erect, like that of a Perch. They feed on worms, flies, and small insects, and are angled for the same as for Trout, in respect to flies, particularly the canalet fly; but if a worm or gentles are used, which they are very fond of,

then angle within a foot from the bottom. Grayling or Umber are fearless in taking a bait, and will often bite while a loose hook hangs in their mouths, which the angler may have lost a minute before ; but when you have fairly hooked him, like the Chub, he is soon subdued. This fish is generally called a Grayling, until full grown, then it is entitled to the name of Umber. In the river Severn with these Grayling you often take a small beautiful fish called a last Spring of the Trout species.

#### GUINNIAD.

THE Guinniaid is a small delicate fish, in taste much like a Trout ; they seldom exceed twelve inches in length, in shape they are much like a Salmon or large Dace, the back is of a brownish colour, belly white, the upper jaw a little prominent, the mouth most like a White Herring ; they abound in the water called Pemble-Meer, in Merionethshire ; it is remarkable that though the river Dee runs through the Pemble-Meer yet no Guinniaids are found in the Stream, neither are Salmon taken in the Meer though they are in the said river Dee.

#### CHARR, OR GILT CHARR.

THE Charr abound in the lakes of Westmorland, and in the Meers of Wales ; the Charr is spotted with black spots on the back, the belly and sides are of a bright silvery colour, the whole appearance is like a Trout, but broader, they are seldom caught larger than twelve

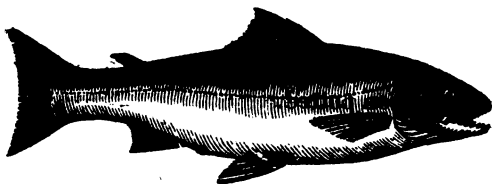
---

inches in length. There is also the red Charr, called by the Welsh, Torgoch, signifying red Belly: this fish is spotted with white spots on the back, and its belly is red, and are much larger than the gilt Charr. The Guinnaid are seldom taken with the angle, but some few Charr are caught. The Charr is a delicious fish, particularly when potted.





## CHAP. XXIX.



THE SALMO, OR SALMON.

THE Salmon is a fish which is seldom taken by the angler in South Britain,\* although some are found in the river Thames, and I believe are justly considered to be superior to any bred in other rivers. Salmon are angled for at the top with artificial flies of a very large size, of brown and glaring colours, made of peacock's feathers, &c. as big as a large butterfly; they are also fished for at bottom, both in the Thames and Medway, with a strong leger-line, and a No. 1 hook tied on gyp, which is whipped over with silk waxed with shoemaker's wax: the bait is a raw muscle, prawn, or cockle, taken clear from the shell. They will sometimes take a small

\* In Ireland and Wales, as well as in North Britain, the art of angling for Salmon is much practised and well understood; but the angler of the South, who can cast or throw, dub, dress, or busk a fly, need not fear having sport in either of those countries, by paying a little attention to the methods there pursued in fishing; indeed, the artificial flies used, are neither numerous nor difficult to make: the fly most depended on is a large yellow-bodied fly made on a No. 3 hook, with brownish red wings.

fish, such as is used when trolling with a live-bait for Pike, and also large well-scoured lob worms, of which put two on at a time. Salmon leave the sea for the rivers Thames and Lea in August, and deposit their spawn about michaelmas; in the spring they return again to the sea, generally dividing the year in fresh and salt water. During the first year they are called Salmon Smelts, then Morts, half Fish, &c. In Scotland small Salmon are called Grilts. The Pink Trout is thought in the North to be bred from a female Salmon's spawn being impregnated by a Trout.

I saw a Salmon caught, some years since, which weighed upwards of twelve pounds, in the pool at Bromley, by an angler, with a gut line and No. 9 hook: this person was fishing with a red worm for Dace, and the Salmon took it. As soon as he discovered what he had hooked, he threw his rod into the water, and Mr. Baker, at the mill, lent him his boat, in which he followed the Salmon round the pool, and at length succeeded in tiring and killing him. Salmon will grow to the weight of fifty pounds, and upwards. One was caught in the river Thames, in the year 1789, that weighed nearly seventy pounds, and was sold at Mr. Howell's, the fishmonger, opposite America Square, in the Minories, at one shilling per lb. Among the regulations to protect this fish, the party who catch and send Salmon to London for sale, of less than six pounds weight, forfeits five pounds; the said penalty also attaches to the seller and buyer of the fish. Immense quantities of Salmon and other fish are sold at Billings-

---

gate-market, but it is not allowed to be sold or exposed for sale before three o'clock in the morning from Lady-day to Michaelmas, nor before five in the morning from Michaelmas to Lady-day.

#### REMARKS ON SALMON.

The Salmon is unknown in the Mediterranean sea, and other warm climates, but is found in all northern waters ; it lives in fresh water as well as salt, going up rivers, in the autumn, hundreds of miles to deposit its spawn: intent only on this object, they spring up cataracts, and over objects of great height—when they are unexpectedly obstructed in their journey, they swim back a few paces, then, collecting all their force, with an astonishing spring, over-leap every obstacle,

His tail takes in his mouth, and bending like a bow  
That's to full compass drawn, aloft himself does throw.

After they have spawned, they return to the sea very lean, but soon recover, and become twice their weight in two months.\* In the river Tweed, in July, more than a hundred are often taken at one haul, most of

\* The Rev. HENRY MAJOR, Rector of Kilbarrow, in Ireland, declares, that the Salmon fry, weighing only one ounce when leaving the fresh water for the ocean, have, on their return, after an absence of three months, grown so amazingly, as to weigh ten pounds; the fact has been ascertained, The Rev. Gentleman says, by marking the numbers of those small fish, by passing thread through the dorsal fin of some, and, by cutting the said fin away from others, by which method he conceives no mistake could possibly occur.

---

which are sent to London fresh, (Salmon are out season during three months of a year in Scotland) the remainder are either salted, pickled, or dried, and sent also to London, and to different parts of the Continent. It is supposed that more than two hundred thousand Salmon are caught in the river Tweed annually. Salmon have teeth, both on the jaws and tongue, and the body is covered with small silvery scales: they are generally considered very nutritious food. Salmon are very weak and sickly while spawning, and much distressed while labouring to make a pit or hole to deposit their spawn in which they perform with their nose and tail. I have known them to remain in the same spot (always about the middle of the stream on the gravelly sharps and shallows) in the river Lea for two or three weeks, during which time they have thrown around some wheelbarrows full of gravel in making a hole to deposit their spawn; after having accomplished this object, and the male performed his office, they cover the whole over again, and in the following spring the ova or spawn become Salmon Smelts or Skeggers, and break the gravel away that covers them, and endeavour to make their way to the ocean. When the Salmon meet with very hard gravelly bottoms where they wish to deposit their ova, it sometimes so exhausts them by the exertions they are obliged to make, that they are easily speared or taken by nets, but they are not then fit for the table. One Salmon will produce 12000 annually.

## CHAP. XXX.

### OF ANGLING FOR SALT WATER FISH.

FOR the information of the lovers of angling, who may reside on the sea coast, or those whose business, pleasure, ill health, or any other cause may occasion a visit, voyage, or residence on the shores of the sea, I have subjoined (to the art of angling for fresh water fish) the different ways practised in catching fish in the sea with hook and line. The tackle, baits, &c. are concisely and practically described.

#### GENERAL REMARKS ON LINES, HOOKS, BAITS, &c.

The lines used for fishing in the sea, when a rod and float is not attached to them, are made of hempen cord, and sold at the fishing tackle shops, under the name of Cod and Mackerel lines; but when fishing from a pier, either Ramsgate, Dover, or any other, or from a head land, &c. during tolerable calm weather, I always use a strong plaited silk line, of a dark colour, and upwards of seventy yards long, wound on the largest size multiplying winch, which I fasten on a very stout Bamboo trolling rod, twenty feet long, on this line I place one of the largest size cork floats, to sink which to its proper depth, that is three parts under water, I put on as many large split shot as is necessary for the purpose, in preference to a ledger lead, and fish with a hook, No. 1 or 2 tied on fine and strong plaited silk or treble gut, but think the silk much the best. The baits generally used are lug worms, which worms are got by digging



# MACKEREL.



---

with a three-prong fork in the sand ; when the tide is out, the places to find them are easily discovered by observing where the sand is raised in small hillocks ; the other baits are well scoured lob worms, small pieces of fresh fish, Lampreys, Eels, Muscles, Shrimps, &c. The bait always touching or drifting on the bottom.

## WHITING.

Whitings are very numerous around the southern shore of England, they are angled for generally in a boat a few miles from the shore, but they may be caught from Peirs, &c. When they are fish'd for in boats, it is usual to hire a boat and a man for the purpose ; the boat-man finds tackle and baits, which are lug worms ; a large hairy worm dug from the sea sands, to those baits I have nothing to object, but their hooks in general are miserably bad. After my first essay in this mode of angling I always provided my own hooks, which are the No. 1 and 2 tied to treble gut or plaited silk, and I always found my account in it, generally killing three fish to other anglers two, when we have gone in a party for the purpose of fishing for Whiting, I using my own tackle, the other party the rusty Cod and Mackerel hooks of the boatmen. The line used in fishing for Whiting from a boat is a small strong cord or Mackerel line, to the bottom of which is fastened a piece of lead called a dip, prepared for the purpose, to be bought at the tackle shops ; two or more hooks are used fastened to a small wire, which is suspended across the bottom of the line, so that the hooks and



baits do not hang or twist together, the dip lead hangs between the hooks ; having anchored the boat, and baited your hooks put them overboard close to the side of the boat, let them sink till you feel the dip lead touch the bottom, hold the line between the thumb and fore finger, lay the back of your hand or wrist on the side of the boat, your thumb and fingers inclining to the water, keeping raising the line and hooks gently a few inches from the bottom, letting it fall again, which is easily discovered by the dip lead touching the ground, (for whiting are found on clean level sandy bottoms) when the Fish bite you will feel a sudden snatch or jerk, immediately strike and draw up your line ; sometimes you may loose the fish for want of sharp hooks, but it ought to be noticed, that those who are not accustomed to fish from a boat, frequently think they have a bite when it is only the motion or rolling of the boat ; a little practice will soon enable the angler to distinguish the difference. When thus fishing for Whittings, you frequently catch Plaice, Dabs, &c. as well as Whittings, sometimes a Whiting on one hook and a Dab on another at the same time ; I have caught many a bucket full of those Fish near Margate, at Weymouth, &c. from a boat. The places I have been in the habit of angling for Whiting with rod and line is from the piers at Ramsgate and Dover, for which purpose fit your tackle as follows ; provide a strong trolling rod, about twenty feet long, with a stout ring on each joint, the top joint should have two ; fasten a multiplying winch, of the largest size, (which ought to contain seventy or eighty yards of the strongest plaited silk line, to the butt of the rod

draw as much of the line from the winch through the rings on the rod as is necessary, put on the line one of the largest size cork floats, and within a foot of the hook as many large shot as will sink the float three parts under water. Then fasten the hook, or rather the length of treble gut or plaited silk to which the hook a No. 1 is tied; on the line either with a loop or by a draw knot plumb the depth, for which purpose a larger plummet is necessary than what is used in river or pond fishing, let your bait lightly drag the bottom; the best baits are fresh lug worms, pièces of Smelts, or any fresh white fish, or well scoured lob worms; many sea fish will also take a large bunch of gentles put on the hook, or a piece of greaves. Those persons who seldom angle for any but salt-water fish, are not so attentive to clean good baits, or covering the point of the hook, &c. as the fresh-water anglers are, but those who pay a little more attention to the mode of baiting their hooks, &c. will be amply repaid by increase of sport. Note, the best time for salt-water fishing is in warm weather, and always during the time the tide is flowing, or as some term it rising. Whiting are universally considered as light nutritious food, they seldom exceed half a pound in weight, in shape this fish is long and slender in the body, but large and bony about the head, the colour silvery, and the skin almost transparent. Whiting Pollack, are I believe of the same specie, though larger, the Whiting Pout is smaller; they are all angled for in the same way.

## COD.

This fish is caught on the coast all round Great Britain, and on the coast of Buchan in Scotland, on the Frith of Forth, the Clyde, and on both sides of the Frith of Murray. The chief place where Cod are caught for the London market, that is to say fresh Cod, is on the North-East part of Ireland during the summer, or rather from spring till Michaelmas, and also on the North-East coast of England from spring till Midsummer. I have caught small Cod with the same tackle, rod, float, &c. as described for angling from Piers, &c. for Whiting, particularly from and between the rocks and small headlands near Water-Bay and West-Gate Bay, near Birchington, that is on the Kentish coast between the Reculvers and Margate. I have been most successful when my hook was baited with a piece of Whiting about the size of a large nut; they will also take bullock's liver, lug-worms, lob-worms, pieces of Lobsters, Shrimps, &c. Always fish at bottom, and when the tide is making in, and in still holes between rocks, where the bottom is sandy and clear from weeds, the Cod so caught are small, seldom weighing two pounds, and are called on the coast Cod-lings. It is well known, the great supply of salt Cod come from the banks of Newfoundland, some weighing near thirty pounds.

## PLAICE:

The best of this specie of fish is called Downs Plaice, being chiefly caught in the Downs or on the flats which

are in the sea between Folkstone and Hastings, weighing from one to five or six pounds weight; of course you must angle from a boat; on the coast of Holland they are caught considerably larger, I have heard of some that weighed eighteen pounds; the large Plaice are called Dutch Plaice. The Plaice bite very freely at a lug worm, lob worms, a piece of fresh Salmon, half an Oyster, a raw Muscle, or Shrimps; this fish has but a small mouth, therefore a hook, No. 3 or 4 is quite large enough, whether you use a line held by the hand, or fish with a rod to the line; if the weather is calm, you may angle with the same rod, line, and tackle as described for Cod or Whiting, but note, smaller hooks are required; for there is much difference between the size of the mouth of a Whiting and Plaice, and also in the strength thereof, by giving the Plaice plenty of line, you may kill very heavy fish with a No. 4 hook, and receive much amusement; those fish will feed at half or mid water as well as at bottom. Plaice are considered a very wholesome light food, and when dressed, and eat fresh caught on the sea coast, are a choice fish.

#### TURBOT.

The London market is chiefly supplied with Turbot by the Dutch fishermen, or with those caught on the Dutch coast or Dogger Bank, but a great many are caught on the coasts of Cornwall and Devon, about Torbay, &c. The most killing bait for Turbot are Lampries cut into pieces; they are also caught with pieces of Whiting, Herrings, bullock's liver, &c. The

mouth of the Turbot is small, therefore use the same size hooks as for Plaice, with strong line, for Turbot are sometimes hooked of a large size, weighing near twenty pounds, but they are generally about from six to ten pounds. The larger come from the Dutch coast. The Turbot is found on flats and shallows, or sandy shelves, &c. similar to the Plaice, Dabs, and other Flat fish. When angling for Turbot, it is always from a boat. The flesh of Turbot is very white and firm, and doubtless wholesome, if not taken to excess; many prefer the Turbot, to any other fish the ocean or fresh waters produce.

#### MULLET.

Mulletts visit the south west coast of England in the spring, from the Sussex to the Devonshire coast; they enter creeks and rivers, particularly about Arundell and Chichester in Sussex, at the mouth and creeks on the rivers Arun and Lavant, which empty themselves into the sea. At those places Mullet, when of full size, weigh two pounds; are caught both at bottom fishing and with a fly; they are a lively fish, much in action as well as in general appearance like a Dace, loving shallows and sandy bottoms, and in fine weather will rise at the gnat, fly, or any of the small-wing'd artificial or natural flies used in Trout fishing. The Mullet will also take red worms, but notice, your tackle must be fine, though strong, for they are shy, and struggle very hard when they feel the hook; when the water is a little thickened, and the tide flowing, fish at bottom,

---

use No. 9 hook, strong single gut line, small cork float ; bait with one well scoured red worm, the gut line must be fastened to the running line on your rod by a draw knot. This fish is considered a fine and delicious fish both by the moderns and ancients ; in shape they are long, head somewhat flat, sharp nose, the body is covered with larger scales than any other sea fish I know of ; those scales are white ; the whole appearance is like an overgrown Dace.

#### MACKEREL.

This well known fish first appears in the Channel about April, they continue to advance to the Downs, as far as the Godwin sands ; they are caught in immense numbers on the Cornwall, Devon, Sussex, and Kentish Coasts during May and June, in nets by fishermen ; they are equally plentiful on the opposite French Coast ; I have caught many with the angle on the northern coast, particularly off Scarborough in July and August. Mackerel may be caught with a small line called a Mackerel line, held in the hand, baited with a piece of any kind of fresh fish ; they are a bold biting fish, and when you begin to angle for them, and are not provided with baits, use a small piece of red cloth, if they are on the feed, you will soon kill a fish ; you should then cut it up for baits ; when you fish from the stern of a ship while she lays at anchor, let out from ten to twenty yards of line, which will swim away with the current, and your bait will keep in the rippling of the stream, some little below the surface, which is the proper place, for Mackerel feed near the surface, when the water

and weather is bright is the best time ; when you feel a bite, strike smartly, and draw the fish in. You may angle for Mackerel with rod and line the same as described for Whiting, either from a ship at anchor, or from a boat, when the weather is calm. Two hooks may be used with advantage, if placed twelve or fourteen inches apart ; per chance I have hooked a Herring when fishing off Scarborough, and further north, but no person goes expressly to angle for Herrings, therefore conceive it does not come within my plan to say any thing more of this fish.

#### HALIBUT.

Halibut are caught in the British as well as in the German ocean. The usual baits are pieces of fresh fish, Mulletts, Oysters, Wilks, and Eels ; the Halibut is the largest of flat fish ; they are frequently taken near a yard in length, weighing from eighty to a hundred pounds, consequently very strong hooks and lines are necessary ; when a bite is felt it is usual to give line, and a few minutes to pouch before you strike. By many persons Halibut is considered as fine as Turbot.

#### SKATE.

Skate abound on the sea coast all round England, &c. they may be caught near the shore, with a strong long cod line and hook, baited with a piece of any kind of fresh fish, Muscles, Oysters, Wilks, &c. When a bite you will feel them tug, let them pull se-

---

veral times, give line, and a few minutes time to pouch, angle at bottom, and during a breeze of wind. Skate when not too large and crimp'd, are thought good eating by some, but when they are very large, many object to them, as having a rank taste. Skate are caught sometimes that weigh upwards of two hundred pounds. The fishermen on the sea coast use the flesh of Skate to bait for Lobsters, &c.

#### SAND EEL, OR LAUNCE.

This fish is found buried about six or eight inches in sand on the sea beach, and are taken by turning up the sand with a three-prong'd fork, such as are used for digging out lug worms; the best time to search for them is immediately after the tide leaves the sands; the flesh of this fish is of a delicate flavour, and worth the trouble of digging for.

#### SMELTS.

Smelts are caught in many harbours on the sea coast with the angle; I have caught very fine ones in Portsmouth harbour:

#### EEL POUT OR BURBOT.

This fish partakes much of the Eel, being without scales, burying itself among loose sands, weeds, &c. They are numerous as far as the tide flows up the Severn, Trent, and the Mersey rivers, where they are caught with a hook tied to gymp, and baited with worms, Min-



nows, small Gudgeons, &c. they are considered sweet nutritious food ; in length the size vary from twelve to upwards of twenty inches.

#### SURMULLET.

The Surmullet is a scarce fish in this country, I have caught some fishing from the wharfs and keys at Plymouth harbour with an angle rod and line, same as described fishing for Whiting, &c. only using a smaller hook, a No. 8, tied to twisted gut, baited with lob worms, pieces of fresh Salmon, Shrimps, or shell fish ; they are a singular marked fish, having the appearance of painted artificial fish ; some are of a dark blue and white, others of faded yellow hue, some are mottled about the back, fins, &c. with a bright scarlet and yellow, almost as gaudy as the plumage of a paroquet, in shape broad and thick towards the head.

#### GROUPERS AND SNAPPERS.

Those fish are well known at the Havannah and Jamaica, where they are angled for with line and hook. In Jamaica parties go in boats from Kingston and Port Royal to the Pallisades, where many Groupers and Snappers are caught, and frequently Mullet. The tackle is similar to what is used in Europe in fishing for Whiting, which is held over the boats side, and suffered to descend to the bottom from which you raise it a few inches again, letting it touch the bottom, so continuing till you feel a bite. The baits generally used here, are Shrimps, pieces of fish, and the small shell fish.

## BASS.

This fish is generally considered a sea fish, though they will live in rivers and fresh waters; they are much like Salmon in shape, especially the smaller or young Bass, at which time they have black spots on their backs, and large scales on the sides, silvery belly, and dark blue back. The Bass are taken from five to fifteen pound weight, and are thought by some persons a well flavoured fish, but I think them an indifferent tasted fish, and certainly much inferior to Salmon; they are caught in the Severn, and around the coast near Bristol, &c. chiefly with nets, but are sometimes killed by the angler, when he is fishing for Mullet, as they frequent such places as are agreeable to the Mullet, and will take the same baits. See Mullet.

Note, when angling in the sea, as well as in fresh waters early in the morning and late in the evening during the long days, and hot weather is by far the most likely time to have good sport.

## CHAP. XXXI.

## PASTES.

DIRECTIONS HOW TO MAKE EVERY KIND OF PASTE  
USEFUL IN KILLING OR TAKING FISH.

PASTE is a killing and general bait for almost every kind of fish that breed in rivers or any fresh waters, but it requires some little time and labour to make it, which must be done with clean hands; also care and skill in using it. Many strange and ridiculous receipts are to be met with for making paste, which tend much to confound and puzzle the inexperienced angler; such as part of the leg of a kitten, with bees-wax, suet, &c. beat up in a mortar; or cherries and cheese, sheep's blood and saffron; or cheese, flour, aniseed water, and roasted bacon: many others, equally useless and absurd, I could mention; but I shall better serve the novice in angling by assuring him that nothing more is wanted in making paste to kill every kind of fish, which will take paste, than flour-bread, water, and honey, (with a little vermillion to colour the paste, which may sometimes be useful) and teaching him how to make and use the same—I only desire, in return, that he will place confidence in, and follow my directions.

SWEET PASTE FOR CARP, TENCH, CHUB, AND  
ROACH.

Take the crumb of a penny roll, or a piece of a loaf the same size, of the first day's baking, and dip it into

honey ; then work it in your hands, that the honey may be well incorporated with the bread, and until it is of a sufficient consistence to remain on the hook: this is the most killing bait for Carp I ever met with, during the months of July and August. Tench are also very fond of it, likewise Chub and Roach. I have taken many heavy Roach with this sweet paste, when they refused every other bait ; the quantity I have named is enough for a day's fishing, but it is proper to take some to throw in occasionally close to your float while angling. When honey is not to be had, dissolve a good quantity of loaf sugar in warm water, and dip the bread into that, which makes a good clean sweet paste, when well kneaded.

#### PLAIN PASTE FOR ROACH, &c.

Take a piece of the crumb of a roll or loaf, they day after it is baked, about the size of an apple, and dip it lightly in water ; immediately squeeze it as dry as possible, and place it in your left hand, and, with your right thumb and fingers, work or knead it well, until it becomes exceedingly smooth and stiff ; to make this paste to the consistence I have named, it will require to be kneaded a quarter of an hour at least. This paste, when well made, is the best bait used for Roach, as they will seldom refuse it at any time of the year. Carp, Tench, Chub, Dace, Bleak, Barbel, and Minnows, will also take it. This paste is valuable from its being easily made while you are at the water-side ; indeed it is most proper to make it there, especially if you fish at a distance from home, as it may chance to get some-

what sour, by carrying it a length of time ; it is further valuable in striking fish when they bite, for, if made properly, it will adhere to the hook until you have struck, it then flies all to pieces, consequently your hook is not impeded in fixing in the fish, which is material, particularly in angling for Roach, when so small a hook as No. 12 or 13 is used: new-bread paste is more glutinous, and adheres too close, which makes it unfit for a small hook. This new-bread paste is made by taking a piece of crumb of new-baked bread, and a small piece of stale, and kneading it together in your hands a few minutes (without water) till of a proper consistence: those who prefer ease to sport, make use of the last-mentioned paste instead of that made of the second day's bread. To colour paste, add a little vermillion—a very small quantity will make it a pink colour, a little more a poppy.

CHEESE PASTE FOR CHUB, AND GREAVES PASTE  
FOR BARBEL.

This paste is made by mixing some dry Cheshire cheese, (crumbled into small pieces, or powdered) with the crumb of new bread, which must be well kneaded together, when it will become a stiff paste. This is used in Chub fishing, but I prefer the honey paste. To make paste for Barbel, dip the crumb of a new penny loaf into the liquor that greaves have been boiled in, and knead it till stiff and fit for use. In still places this bait is a killing bait both for Barbel and Chub.

---

OBSERVATIONS ON PASTE, AND THE MAKING  
PATENT PASTE.

In making paste, it is absolutely necessary that your hands should be very clean, and likewise the bread and water, otherwise the paste will be of a bad colour and taste—in that case, you must not expect success. A paste is made by mixing water in small quantities with flour, and several times squeezing it dry, forming, in the first instance, a piece of dough; this dough must be worked in the hands through twenty or more different waters, till it becomes of a consistence almost as sticky as birdlime: when made, carry it in a damp cloth, and you must invariably wet your fingers when baiting your hook, or else fingers, cloth, hook and all will stick together. This paste is known to some experienced anglers, and preferred solely for its remaining fast to the hook, which it will do in any stream, however rapid. It is distinguished from other pastes by the name of patent paste; but my own experience has quite convinced me, that the other kinds which I have described are in every respect superior, and which is also the opinion of the best anglers I am acquainted with. By using the different sorts of paste which I have enumerated, and for such fish as I shall direct in their proper places, the angler may be assured of success, without the aid of oils, scents, or any other quackery.

## CHAP. XXXII.

GENTLES AND WORMS, HOW TO GET, KEEP AND  
USE THEM.

Gentles or maggots may be bred from any animal substance, either fish, flesh, or fowl, (those from fish are the least worthy) by exposing it to flies to blow on during the spring and summer: after they are of a full size, put them in a vessel, with some house sand; some use bran, but from its heating quality, the gentles sooner *turn*, as anglers term it, that is become a chrysalis, in which state they are of little or no use. In London it is not worth the trouble of breeding gentles, for as many as will serve a day's fishing may be purchased at any of the tackle-shops for a few pence: the least troublesome method I am acquainted with to keep gentles, during the winter, is to get some full-grown ones, as late in the season as possible, and put them with fresh mould, and half-dried cow-dung, into a vessel two or three feet in depth, which vessel must be kept in a cool cellar or out-house, occasionally sprinkling a little water over them; by adopting this plan I am seldom without gentles in February, March, and April, in which months they are a valuable bait. When you use any at this season of the year, take only as many as you are likely to want, and keep them cool and close, or they will soon turn to a chrysalis if exposed to the air, therefore close immediately up the place you take them from: for want of attending to this caution

many loose their preserved stock in a few days. In the latter end of October, 1813, I put about half a pint of gentles into a large tin watering-pot, having first half filled it with clay from the brick-fields (such as bricks are made of), then filled it up with more clay, and let the pot stand in a tool-house in the garden during the whole winter, which was a very severe one, and when I examined it, in March following, I found nearly the whole of the gentles alive.\* In summer, when on a fishing excursion from home, I take a quantity of gentles, rather green, with me, and daily give them a small piece of fresh flesh or liver, or a small fish; the small gentles then increase in size, and keep up my stock.

(Persons living in London may procure gentles all the year round, in any quantities, at Mr. Rastall's, No. 8, Sleep's Alley, St. John's Street, Clerkenwell, and at Mr. Turpin's, near Sadler's Wells.)

When you go out for a day's angling with gentles, put them in damp sand or earth, for if put in a box

\* The best way to keep gentles, in the summer, is to put them into a salmon-kit, (which may be bought of the people who sell pickled salmon) with some house-sand, and sprinkle daily a handful of dampish sand over them, and they will keep from changing to a chrysalis much longer than if kept in a box or bag; for the kit being very broad at the bottom, enables the gentles to move about, and keep themselves cool; but when they are laid on each other in heaps in a box or bag, they soon become heated, and, in consequence soon change to the chrysalis state. As gentles are so valuable a bait, the angler should not object taking a little trouble to keep them. I have tried many ways, and now give the result of my experience.



with bran they may turn. Note, Carp, Tench, Barbel, and Chub prefer Gentles that are somewhat green, they are then of a higher flavour and scent, which is very enticing to most fish.

#### WORMS.

Cleanse them from filth, to give a tempting gloss,  
Cherish the sullied reptile with damp moss :  
Amid the verdant bed they twine, they toil,  
And from their bodies wipe their native soil.

GAY.

Worms are a very useful and general bait for fish, of which there are many different species. I shall describe

Anglers who live in the country may, if they choose, breed and preserve gentles all the year in the following manner: get the whole or part of a bullock's liver in October, cut gashes in it, and let it be well blown by the flies; when the fly-blows are become full-grown gentles, put them and the remains of the liver into a tight cask or tub, having first put into the tub or cask about a peck of fresh mould from the fields, to which add half the quantity of half-dried cow-dung, and then put the same quantity of mould and dung over them: keep them in a cool place, and when the mould, &c. at the top becomes dry, sprinkle a little water over it. Using a liver I think less disagreeable than having a dead animal blown on by flies; but those who prefer a dog, rabbit, hare, or cat, have only to follow the directions given above, and they will have gentles at all times. Those who may object to keep the gentles in the house, may preserve them in the garden, by putting the liver or other substance with the gentles, mould and cow-dung, in a hole about three feet deep, but note, this hole must be plastered round and at bottom with strong clay, or the gentles will penetrate into the earth to such a distance, that you will lose the greater part, when you open the store do it carefully; for when the spring air reaches the gentles, they quickly become a chrysalis. The great art of preserving gentles consists in keeping them cool. Horse-dung is too hot, but cow-dung nourishes them, as will hog's-dung also, but in a less degree.

---

those which are most fit for the angler's purpose, which are six different kinds, namely the lob, the marsh, the brandling, the red, the blood, and the tag-tail worm; there are small worms found about the roots of dock weeds, cabbage roots, &c. but much inferior to the others I have noticed.

#### LOB-WORMS.

These worms, which are the largest used in angling, are generally found in gardens, and may be gathered in great numbers in a damp evening, during the spring and summer, when they come out of the ground, or by digging for them where much manure has been laid; they may also be got by laying straw on the ground and pouring water over it they then soon come near the surface, and they may be forced out of the ground by pouring a strong mixture of salt and water on it: the lob is a good bait for Trout, Eels and Perch, particularly for night-lines during the early part of the summer.

#### MARSH-WORMS.

Are very common, and may be found under every lump of cow-dung in the fields or commons, or dug out of gardens, fields, or dunghills; in fact, wherever you find earth, you may find marsh-worms: in colour they are a dark brown, with a blewish gloss; when well scour'd they are an excellent bait for Trout, Perch, &c. The poor people who supply the London tackle shops with worms, get a great number of marsh worms on Ken-

---

nington-common in the night, using a candle and lantern to see the worms; this method is practised in spring and summer, particularly after warm rain has fallen in the evenings.

#### BRANDLINGS

Are found in great numbers in dunghills, particularly in those which have lain sometime, and become very rotten, they are used for Carp, Perch, &c. This worm is striped with yellow.

#### RED WORMS.

The red worm is found in old dunghills, and they also breed among the bark, used by tanners, but the principal places where they are found, are the banks of the great common sewers, near the metropolis; from which places the tackle-shops are chiefly supplied: as those banks close to the water breed lob, marsh, brandling, and red-worms in immense numbers, particularly that sewer, which runs from Whitechapel, through Redman's-row, Mile-end, and close by Stepney church, and lies quite open, opposite the Ben Johnson's Head, and so continues to Bow-common, and beside the open sewer that runs from the back of I'ons, the stage-coach master, Islington, to the New River; several poor people get part of their living by procuring these worms, which they sell to the London tackle-shops, at per hundred. The red-worm when well scoured, is of a fine bright red colour, with a knot or belt in the middle: it is the best and most killing worm for Carp, Tench, Bar-

---

bel, Chub, Dace, Perch, Gudgeons, Eels, Flounders, Bream, &c. Too much cannot be said in praise of well-scoured red-worms; two on a hook are very enticing to Perch, Barbel, Carp, Chub, Tench, &c.

#### BLOOD WORMS.

This worm (the smallest used in angling) is found at the bottom of shallow ponds, in cow-lairs or yards, and is bred from the excrements of the cows and other horned cattle; by gathering the earth, sand, and dung from these ponds, innumerable blood worms may be found; some are also to be met with at the bottoms of ditches; they are about an inch long, and not much thicker than a worsted needle, and of a blood-red colour, from which they take their name; this worm is very lively, and a most killing bait for many fish, particularly Gudgeons, Carp, Roach, Dace, &c. put two or three on the hook together. To keep them alive, put them in some earth, mixed with a little damp cow, horse or pig dung; or they may be kept in the soil you find them in, when taken from the ponds.

#### TAG-TAIL WORM.

This worm is found in the spring in marley lands and clayey banks. It is a clean light-colour'd worm, very strong and lively on the hook, and requires but little scouring. Two of the largest size put on a No. 6 hook, is the most killing worm-bait for Trout in the morning early, and late in the evening, particularly during the month of April and after rain.

**SHRIMPS.**

Live or dead Shrimps are a good bait for Perch, Eels, Ruffs or Pope, and Flounders. If dead, the shell or case must be taken off before you use them. When you use Shrimps for a bait, enter the point of your hook in its side near the back, and bring it to the side of the head near the eye.

Note, when angling for Perch, Carp, Pike, Barbel, Chub, Roach, &c. during the months of June, July, August, and September, you must not expect them to feed in the middle of the day, say from eleven till four o'clock in the afternoon, unless the weather is very dark and gloomy during drizzling rain or a light breeze of wind, therefore fish early and late, or you lose your time and labour.



## CHAP. XXXIII.

## HOW TO CLEANSE AND KEEP WORMS.

The best method of cleansing or scouring worms from their filth, is by putting them into damp moss: persons who live in the country have it in their power to get moss with little trouble, as it grows in most fields, on commons, and on banks. About February and March it is in the best state, at which time I generally procure as much as will last me for a twelvemonth: in London it may be purchased at the herb shops in Covent-garden Market, Fleet Market, and I believe in all the vegetable markets. Worms should lie in moss two or three days before they are used, they will then be much brighter, larger, and more lively than when first taken: if you find any of them bruised, mutilated or sickly, throw them away, for if they die their bodies soon become corrupt, spoil the moss, and will occasion the death of others; therefore make it a rule, when you leave off angling, or when you have returned from it, to look over your worms, cast away the diseased, and give the remainder some fresh damp moss.\* By practising this

\* Some writers and anglers speak of worms being a more enticing bait when put among fennel instead of moss, or by putting camphor among the moss, or dipping the worm in tar-water immediately before you put it on the hook. I can truly affirm, I have never found either of those methods increase my sport, but have well-grounded reasons to suppose that fish refused my worm when so doctor'd, but would have taken it freely if offered in a clean scoured state.—Some recommend worms to be put in a box scented with oil of ivy; this I have never tried.

method, you may preserve your worms for a few weeks, which is material when on an excursion, as worms are difficult to get in dry weather, &c.

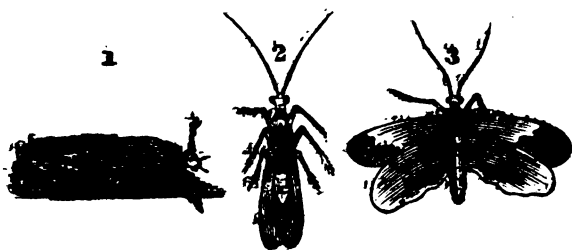
#### HOW TO PRESERVE A STOCK OF WORMS.

Take about a pound of mutton-suet, chopped into small pieces, and put it into a sauce-pan, containing about a quart of water ; let it boil slowly, until the suet is dissolved, and then, into this liquor dip some pieces of coarse hempen sacking, or cloth, such as is called wrappers at the linen drapers, or old coarse worn out towels, though the new cloth is best, if before it is used it be well washed to free it from the oil or dressing which may adhere to it from the loom : when the clothes are well saturated with the fat liquor, and cold, mix some fresh mould with them, and put the whole into a deep earthen vessel or small tub, into this pour a good stock of marsh, or red-worms, and over the top, tie a cloth to prevent them escaping, and in which there should be a few very small holes to admit air. If the vessel is placed in a cool dark cellar the worms will feed and cleanse themselves, and keep lively and fit for use, for many months. It is advisable to keep the different species of worms in separate vessels, so that the angler can at any time select the sort, and quantity necessary, to be placed in moss, preparatory to his using them.

The best time to collect a stock of worms is in March, for at that season they are very healthy, and may be found in great numbers, they may be kept twelve months.

I would advise the angler always to take a few red-worms with him, when he goes to fish, even if he intends to try for Roach or any other fish, for although paste is the proper bait for Roach, yet sometimes a Perch will make his appearance among the Roach which he may have collected near his hook, and his sport will instantly cease; in that case a worm is the remedy, for on applying it the disturber is generally soon taken: a change of weather by the wind getting up, will also sometimes put an end to Roach fishing, and yet the day be fine for roving for Perch, which, without a few well scoured worms cannot be practised.

Worms may be purchased at most of the fishing tackle shops in London at, from three-pence to six-pence per hundred.



THE BREED OF WASPS, BOBS, CLAP-BAITS, CADS, CADIS, OR CASE-WORMS, OR MAGGOTS DESCRIBED;  
ALSO THE SPAWN OF SALMON AS BAIT.

The young wasp or bee, when in the state of a maggot, is an excellent dapping and tripping bait for Trout;



this maggot is much like the common gentle, but considerably larger: put a good bunch of them on the hook, a No. 8, at a time, and let them swim down the current, touching the bottom. There are two other kinds of maggots, which were much used by anglers formerly, but the experienced of the present day very properly reject them. These maggots, or, as some call them bobs and grubs, are found when turned up by the plough, particularly in the spring, and in a sandy soil; they are three times as big as a gentle, and have a red head: they are the breed of insects called cock-chafers—they afford food for rooks, who will closely follow the plough in search of them, and, during the season, grow very fat upon them. The other is called the cow-dung bob, grub, or clap-bait; they may be found early in the spring months and parts of summer, under half-dry cow-dung, in meadows, grass commons, &c. This maggot is the produce of the blue, or cow-beetle, which flies about in the summer evenings, and frequently smites the patient angler on the face, in his return from his favourite amusement. Its colour is a dusky yellowish white, and some have a dark coloured head. The only success I have met with in angling with those bobs or grubs, has been while fishing for Perch, and have sometimes taken Perch in the months of July and August (especially in ponds and still waters) when they refused a worm, but they have generally been small fish; there are also two or three other in-

sects, known by the names of cad-bait,\* case-worms, rough-coats, &c. which were formerly used in angling for Roach, Dace, and Chub; but in respect to their value as bait for fishing, compared with what the modern angler uses, they are hardly worth naming or describing, yet are extremely curious as a natural production. The cad may be found on the margin of small rivers, (the banks of the New River, and the Lea abound with them) adhering to the bank sides, or a little below the surface, and sometimes on the top, during the spring months. This insect is about three quarters of an inch long, enclosed in a rough husk or case, the size of a large tobacco-pipe stem, and has the appearance of small pieces of decayed sticks, &c. as the weather becomes warm, they break through the case, and are a complete fly. Chub will take Salmon spawn as a bait in those rivers, where Salmon are in the habit of spawning; you may use it either boil'd or raw; the best time is during winter and spring.

\* Cads, cadis, or case-worms, or maggots, may be kept and scoured in a box or bag, in damp house-sand; but they are really not worth the trouble of getting or preserving while gentles can be procured: when they are changed into a fly some use them sunk a foot in the water, by putting a small shot on the line, and will sometimes take a fish in this manner. See the plate.—First, the cad in ~~shell~~ or case; secondly, a complete fly; thirdly, on the wing—this fly is the stone fly, by some called the cad fly; the green and grey drake are similar incased in pieces of rushes, dried stems of weeds, &c. until they become flies; those look like maggots or grubs of a yellowish colour, that are found in cases, or husks of wood and stones, and those incased in rushy or weedy husks, are invariably green.

## CHAP. XXXIV.

## FLY-FISHING.



1. Ant-fly.—2. Green-drake.—3. Palmer.

ARTIFICIAL FLY FISHING, AND FLY MAKING FOR  
TROUT, &c.

Silent along the mazy margin stray,  
And with the fur-wrought fly delude the prey.

FISHING with an artificial fly is certainly a very pleasant and gentlemanly way of angling, and is attended with much less labour and trouble than bottom fishing. The fly fisherman has but little to carry either in bulk or weight, nor has he the dirty work of digging ~~the~~ making ground baits, &c.; he may travel for miles with a book of flies in his pocket, and a light rod in his hand, and cast in his bait as he roves on the banks of a river, without soiling his fingers, it is therefore preferred by many to every other way of angling: yet fly fishing is not without its disadvantages, for there are many kinds of fish that will not take a fly, whereas,

all the different species which the fresh waters produce, will take a bait at bottom at some season of the year ; and it is also worthy of notice, that the angler who fishes at bottom, has many months and days in the year when the fish will so feed, consequently he has frequent opportunities of enjoying his amusement when the fly fisherman is entirely deprived of the chance of sport by very cold, or wet weather, the winter season, &c. Many good Jack and Pike are taken at Christmas, but at that season of the year neither Trout or Chub are likely to rise for a fly, however skilfully made or thrown. Fly fishing certainly partakes more of science than bottom fishing, and of course requires much time, study, and practice, before the angler can become any thing like an adept at making or casting a fly ; indeed, artificial fly making is difficult to learn, and more difficult to describe. The young angler would gain much information on the subject by attending a fly fisherman, while he is casting or making an artificial fly ; if he cannot avail himself of such knowledge, he must persevere and strictly follow the directions I shall offer to his notice, in both making and casting a fly. There are many excellent fly fishermen who never trouble themselves to make a fly, yet kill Trout in every Trout stream they fish, with flies bought at the London tackle shops ; in truth, flies are now made so well at those shops, that it is not worth the angler's trouble to make them.

I should recommend the young fly fisherman in the

first instance to purchase his artificial flies,\* but after some experience in the art, if he should choose to make his own; and to enable him to do so properly, I shall minutely describe the method of making them, and the materials of which they should respectively be formed. I will also give him such directions for making the plain palmer or hackle, as will enable him at all times to supply himself, should he prefer making them to buying them at the tackle shops.

#### CONCISE DIRECTIONS HOW TO MAKE AN ARTIFICIAL FLY.

Take some fine silk, of the proper colour, and wax

\* In purchasing artificial flies it would be proper to apply for them at some respectable fishing-tackle shop, that the novice may feel assured he will receive those for which he asks. The following will be proper to select: red and black palmers, red and black hackles, grouse, red and black ant flies, the yellow may fly or green drake, small black gnat flies, the red spinner and white moth. Having purchased the above assortment of flies, the angler should make himself well acquainted with their several forms, the number of wings, and every other particular, that he may be able to know every difference between the several kinds, thereby guarding against having flies imposed on him of a specie different to what he may think proper to order. The flies above enumerated are all of established credit; their respective merits, the way and materials of which they are made, will be found under their different names. In many places, certain flies are preferred; the bean or thistle fly has been considered a secret in some part of Wales, and much valued. There is a fly used very much at Watford, in Herts, called Harding's fly, of the merits of such flies experience will teach how to appreciate.

---

it well with bees-wax,\* then hold the bend of the hook between the fore-finger and thumb of the left hand, and with the right give the silk two or three turns round the shank, and fasten it; then take a small feather, of the colour you intend the fly should be, strip off some of the fibres towards the quill, and leave a sufficient quantity for the wings, holding the point of the feather between your finger and thumb, turn back most of the remaining fibres, and laying the point end of the feather upon the hook, give a few more laps round it with your silk, and fasten; then twirl the feather round the hook till all the fibres are wrapped upon it; which done, fasten and cut off the two ends of the feather; then, with dubbing of the proper colour twisted round the remaining silk, warp from the wings towards the bend of the hook, till the fly is the size required. Before the young artist tries his skill at dressing or making a fly, (suppose a green-drake,) he should carefully take an artificial one to pieces, and observe how it is formed.

Thus having learnt how to apply his materials to the hook, the knowledge how to make the May flies is first

\* To wax the fine silk used in whipping or tying on hooks requires some care: the best way is to get a piece of stout leather, such as the upper part of shoes or boots are made of, and lay your wax smoothly on it, then take three or four lengths of silk together and draw them over the wax, keeping your thumb on the silk, the wax'd leather resting on the fore-finger until the whole is well coated with wax, then take each piece separately and draw it briskly between a piece of soft or wash leather, it will then be fit for use. Note, this fine silk is not strong enough to be wax'd singly.

requisite to be understood ; for these flies are of so much value to the angler, that every one who wishes to excel in fly-fishing, should learn how to make them as soon as possible.\* The manufacture of the green-drake, gray-drake, and stone-fly, in particular, should be well understood, as it is sometimes difficult to procure, or preserve the natural ones ; and moreover, a proficiency in the art of making these will enable any person to make a fly to any pattern, an art highly necessary, for it will often happen that Trout will refuse every fly you may have with you ; and the only resource then is, to sit down and make one resembling, as much as possible, those which you may find flying about the spot.

When artful flies the angler would prepare,  
This task of all deserves his utmost care :  
Nor verse nor prose can ever teach him well  
What masters only know, and practice tell ;  
Yet thus at large I venture to support,  
Nature best followed best secures the sport :  
Of flies the kinds, their seasons, and their breed,  
Their shapes, their hue, with nice observance heed :  
Which most the Trout admires, and where obtain'd,  
Experience will teach, or perchance some friend.  
Thus sung MOSES BROWN, an old Piscator.

#### HOW TO MAKE THE ARTIFICIAL GREEN-DRAKE, OR YELLOW MAY-FLY AND OTHERS.

Make the body of seal's fur, or yellow mohair, a little cub fox-down, or hog's wool, or light-brown from

\* There are several persons in London who manufacture artificial flies for sale, and among those professed fly-makers, some, for a gratuity, will instruct the angler in the whole art and mystery of fly-making.

a Turkey carpet, mixed; warp with pale yellow; pale yellow, or red cock's hackle, under the wings: wings of a mallard, or wild drake's feather, dyed yellow,\* three whisks for his tail from a sable muff. When this green-drake is made small, it is then generally termed the yellow may-fly.

#### GREY-DRAKE.

Make the body from a white ostrich's feather: the end of the body, towards the tail of peacock's herl; warping of ash-colour, with silver twist, and black hackle; wings of a dark-grey feather of a mallard.

#### STONE-FLY.

To form the body of this fly, take bear's dam, and a little brown and yellow camlet well mixed, but so placed that the fly may be more yellow on the belly, towards the tail, underneath, than in any other part; place two or three hairs of a black cat's beard or whiskers, or the fibres of a dark hackle, on the top of your hook, in the

\* Put a handful of horse-radish leaves into a pint of water, to which add a piece of alum the size of a small walnut; simmer the whole for some time, and it will then dye feathers, silk, &c. a yellow of any shade and fast colour. The best colour for gut used in fly-fishing, is generally considered to be the water colour. By steeping gut in a mixture of soot and alum while hot, that has been boiled a few minutes together in half a pint of water, you have the colour required, or in gin and black ink; but those who wish to avoid the trouble of colouring gut, hair, &c. may have it to their choice, by giving orders to the principal tackle-shops in London.



arming, so as to be turned up when you warp on your dubbing, and to stand almost upright, branching one from the other: rib with yellow silk, make the wings large and long, of the dark-grey feather of a mallard.

As the formation of these artificial may-flies will be rendered not only easier, but more perfect, by an intimate acquaintance with the natural ones, I shall here give such a description of them as will at least lead the young angler to a careful observation of them when on his fishing excursions,

#### NATURAL MAY-FLIES.

##### GREEN-DRAKE, OR YELLOW MAY-FLY.

This may-fly is bred from the cad-worm, and is found in numbers beside most small gravelly rivers, near the banks where bushes grow, and overhang the water, to which places they fly when they change from their chrysalis state. The curious observer may be gratified daily, during fine weather in May, by seeing this singular insect break through the case of dried weed or straw rushes, in which it has been incased while in the state of a maggot, and, by the wonderful power of the Creator, becomes completely transformed into a fly. I have seen scores on the sides of the river Lea, and also the New River, make their first effort to fly, but their wings and legs seem confined, or stiff, so that they generally flutter upon the surface of the water, and most of them become immediate food for the Trout or other fish. This fly seems to me to wish, immediately it

escapes from its shell or husk, to reach the bushes, but, as I before observed, most of them perish in their first effort. The body of this fly is a yellow, (some are darker than others,) ribbed across with green; the tail consists of three small whisks, quite dark, and turned upwards to the back, like the tail of a drake or mallard: from the green stripes on the body, and its turned-up tail, this may-fly receives the name of green-drake; in some places it is also called the cock-up or tilt-up tail, so is the grey-drake.

#### GREY-DRAKE.

The grey-drake, in shape and size, is like the green-drake, but different in colour, being a lighter yellow, and striped with black down its body; the wings are glossy black, and thin, like a cob-web.

#### STONE-FLY, CALLED THE WATER-CRICKET OR CREEPER, WHILE IN THE STATE OR FORM OF A MAGGOT.

The stone-fly escapes from the husk or case before his wings are sufficiently grown so as to enable him to fly, and creeps to the crevices of stones, in which places they may be found, and from which circumstance the name is derived: they are found in almost all Trout streams, or stony rivers, and are known by the angler for Trout as a killing bait; therefore many take the trouble of placing stones one on the other, so as to leave a hollow between, that the fly may be sheltered from the wind until his wings are full grown, which always

occurs early in May. The body of the stone-fly is long and thick, of a brown colour, ribbed with yellow, and has whiskers at the tail, and two small horns on his head: when full grown, the wings are double, and of a dusky dark-brown colour. This fly has several legs, and uses them more than his wings, as you may often find them paddling on the top of the water, only moving their legs. The three flies I have just described, namely, the green-drake, the grey-drake, and the stone-fly, are all known by the name of the May fly,\* and certainly are the best (either natural or artificial) that can be used, until midsummer, in most waters. Trout are immoderately fond of these May flies, and nature has been very bountiful in providing millions of them, from feeding on which the Trout soon recovers his strength and beauty, and also becomes very fat.

#### DIRECTIONS FOR MAKING A PLAIN PALMER OR HACKLE.

First provide a short length of gut, about fifteen inches long, and a hook No. 7 or 8, some red silk well waxed with red wax, a fine red hackle, and some strands of ostrich feathers: hold the hook by the bend, between the forefinger and thumb of the left hand, with the shank to-

\* Although the green-drake, the grey-drake, and the stone-fly, are all termed may-flies, yet the young fly fisherman should be apprized, that when the may-fly is spoken of among anglers, they generally mean the green-drake, or as some call it, the yellow may-fly, from the colour of its wings, and it certainly is the most general killing may-fly; yet the stone-fly is found to be the best in some few places, more especially about Carshalton, also in very stony small rivers.

wards the right hand, and with the point and beard of your hook nearly parallel with the tops of your fingers, then take the length of silk about the middle, and lay the one half along the inside of the hook towards your left hand, the other to the right, then take that part of the silk that lies towards your right hand, between the fore-finger and thumb of that hand, and holding that part towards your left tight along the inside of the hook, whip that to the right, three or four times round the shank of the hook, towards the right hand; after which, take the gut and lay one end of it along the inside of the shank of the hook till it comes near to the bend, then hold the hook, silk, and gut tight between the fore-finger and thumb of your left hand, and afterwards give that part of the silk to your right hand three or four whips more over the hook and gut, till it comes nearly to the end of the shank; make a loop and fasten it tight; then whip it neatly again over silk, gut, and hook, till it comes near the bend of it, after which, make another loop, and fasten it again; then if the gut reaches farther than the bend, cut it off, and your hook will be whipped on, and the parts of the silk will hang from the bend of it: then wax the longest ends of the silk again, and take three or four strands of an ostrich's feather, and holding them and the hook as in the first position, the feathers to the left hand, and the roots of them in the bend of the hook, with the silk you waxed last, whip them three or four times round, make a loop, and fasten them tight; then turning the strands to the right hand, and twisting them and the silk to-

gether, with the forefinger and thumb of the right hand wind them round the shank of the hook till you come to the place where you fastened, then make a loop and fasten them again: if the strands should not be long enough to wind, as far as it is necessary, round the shank, when the silk gets bare, you must twist others on it; after which, take a pair of small-pointed sharp scissors, and cut the palmer's body to an oval form, (be careful not to cut away too much of the dubbing.) Both ends of the silk being separated at the bend and shank end of the hook, wax them both again; then take the hackle, hold the small end between the fore-finger and thumb of your left hand, and stroke the fibres of it with your right, contrariwise to which they are formed; keep your hold as in the first position, and place the point of the hackle in its bend with that side which grows nearest the cock upward, then whip it tight to the hook—in fastening it, avoid tying in the fibres as much as possible. the hackle being fastened, take it by the large end, and keeping the side nearest the cock to the left hand, begin with your right hand to wind it up the shank upon the dubbing, stopping every second turn, and holding what you have wound tight with your left fingers, whilst with a needle you pick what fibres may have been taken in: proceed in this manner until you come to the place where you first fastened, and where an end of the silk is; then clip those fibres off the hackle which you hold between your fore-finger and thumb, close to the stem, and hold the stem close to the hook; afterwards take the silk in your right hand, and whip the stem quite fast

to it, then make a loop and fasten it tight. Take a sharp knife, and if that part of the stem next the shank of the hook, is as long as the part of the hook which is bare, pare it fine; wax your silk, and bind neatly over the bare part of the hook, then fasten the silk tight, and spread some shoe-maker's wax lightly on the last binding; then clip off the end of the remaining silk at the shank and bend of the hook, also any fibres that may stand amiss.\*

DIRECTIONS FOR MAKING A GOLDEN OR SILVER  
PALMER.

The dubbing the same as the plain palmer, ribbed with gold or silver twist, with a red hackle over all. When you whip the end of the hackle to the bend of the hook, you must do the same to the gold or silver twist,

\* Capt. WILLIAMSON, author of the *Angler's Vade Mecum*, makes a plain or palmer hackle in the following manner: First whipping the hook on for a few laps and lapping in the ends of a long fibre, and of a hackle at the same place, then lapping down the whole length as far as the shank is straight, and in making the half hitches at bottom a small piece of plaiting is lapped in; this done, carry the fibre round the hook very close, adding a second or more fibres if requisite, to complete down to the end of the whipping; when it is completed thereto, lap it under the plaiting, which is now to be carried round from the bottom to the top, leaving a very small interval between each round, when the plaiting is brought up completely; let the hackle be passed round progressively downwards, so as nearly to fill up the intervals left by the plaiting; fasten off at the bottom with two half hitches; if the hackle have very long stiff fibres, the palmer will resemble those hairy caterpillars which are found in gardens and fields on leaves, grass, &c.

---

first winding either of them on the dubbing, observing that they lie flat on it, and then fasten off: then proceed as before directed with the hackle—some wind the hackle on the dubbing first, and rib the body afterwards.

Those hackles or palmers will kill Trout in every month during the whole year, in mornings and evenings that are fit for fly-fishing, and in every water where I have known them used.

Those who wish to try a larger palmer than what I have described, have only to increase the dubbing, &c. on a No. 6 hook ; but the smaller the hook is the neater will the fly look, and will assuredly increase your sport. To fish fine and far off is the *ne plus ultra* of fly-fishing.

#### HOW TO MAKE A DUB FLY.

Another method of making an artificial fly is as follows, which Sir John Hawkins, in his Notes on Charles Cotton, considers superior to any other ; and as many anglers continue to make their fly by that direction, I have been induced to insert it, being of opinion that it is not material by which direction the young artist practises making a fly, for when he becomes so much master of the art as to make a fly, he will soon be able to judge of the merits of any written or verbal description relative to artificial fly-making. Hold the hook between the fore-finger and thumb of the left hand, with the back of the shank upwards, and the point towards your fin-

gers ends ; then take a strong small silk, of the colour of the fly you intend to make, wax it well with wax of the same colour, (you should have wax of all colours with you) and draw it betwixt your finger and thumb to the head of the shank, and whip it twice or thrice about the bare hook, which is done both to prevent slipping, and also to prevent the shank of the hook cutting the fibres of your hair or gut, which sometimes it otherwise will do ; then take your line and draw it betwixt your finger and thumb, holding the hook so as only to suffer it to pass by until you have the knot of your hair or gut almost to the middle of the shank of the hook on the inside, then whip your silk twice or thrice about both hook and line as hard as the strength of the silk will permit, which being done, strip the feathers for the wings of a proportionable bigness for the size of the fly, placing that side downwards which grew uppermost before, upon the back of the hook, leaving so much only as to serve for the length of the wings of the point of the plume, lying reversed from the end of the shank upwards ; then whip your silk twice or thrice about the root end of the feather, hook, and hair or gut ; which being done, clip off the root end of the feather, close by the arming, and then whip the silk firmly round the hook, and hair or gut, until you come to the bend of the hook, but no further ; which being done, cut away the end of the hair or gut, and fasten it, and take off the dubbing, which is to make the body of your fly, as much as you think proper, and holding it lightly with the hook, betwixt the finger and thumb of



your left hand, take your silk with the right, and twisting it betwixt the finger and thumb of that hand, the dubbing will spin itself about the silk, which, when it has so done, whip it about the armed hook backward, until you come to the setting on the wings, and then take the feather for the wings, and divide it equally in two parts, and turn them back towards the bend, the one on the one side and the other on the other of the shank, holding them fast in that posture, betwixt the fore finger and thumb of your left hand; which done, wrap them down so as to stand slopingly towards the bend of the hook, and warped up to the end of the shanks: hold the fly fast betwixt the finger and thumb of your left hand, and take the silk betwixt the finger and thumb of your right hand, and where the warping ends, pinch or nip with your thumb-nail against your finger, and strip away the remainder of the dubbing from the silk, and then with the bare silk, whip it once or twice about to make the wings stand in due order, then fasten and cut it off: after which, with the point of a needle, raise up the dubbing gently from the warp, twitch off the superfluous hairs of your dubbing; leave the wings of an equal length, or else your fly will never swim true.\*—Small light-coloured flies are most proper for

\* The angler will perceive by this description of making an artificial fly, he has ten rules to observe; first, how to hold the hook and line; secondly and thirdly, how to whip around the bare hook and join hook and line; fourthly, how to put on the wings; fifthly, how to twirl and lap on the dubbing; sixthly, how to work it up towards the head; seventhly, how to part the wings; eighthly, how to nip off the superfluous dubbing; ninthly, how to fasten; tenthly, how to trim and adjust the fly for use, and note those flies whose bodies are

clear, shallow water, during a bright sky, and the larger sort for dark weather, and thicker or deeper waters.

**MATERIALS FOR MAKING ARTIFICIAL FLIES.**

Get some Seal's fur, also mohairs, black, blue and purple; also white and violet; camlets, both hair and worsted, blue, yellow, dun, light-brown, red violet, purple, black, horse-flesh, pink, and orange colours; also hackle feathers, (hackles are long tender feathers which hang from the head of a cock down his neck;) get them of the following colours, but not too large: red, dun, yellowish, white, and perfect black. Feathers to form the wings, &c. of flies are got from the mallard and partridge, especially those red ones in the tail; feathers from a cock pheasant's breast and tail, the wings of the blackbird, the brown hen, the starling, the jay, the land-rail, the thrush, the fieldfare, and the water-coot; the feathers from the crown of a plover, green and copper-coloured; peacock's and black ostrich's herl, and feathers from the heron's neck and wings. In most instances where the mallard's feather is directed to be used, that from the starling's wing is generally preferred. You must also be provided with marking-silk, fine, strong, and of all colours; flaw silk, gold and silver flatted wire or twist, a sharp knife, hooks of all sizes, hog's bristles for loops to your flies, shoe-maker's wax, a large needle to raise your dubbing when flattened, and a pair of sharp-pointed scissors. A little portable vice is necessary to fix on the table, to which you may occasionally fasten your hook, while dressing a fly.

M

Be particular in imitating the belly of the fly, as that part is most in the fish's sight, and make your wings always of an equal length to insure your fly to swim true.

All those materials for fly-making may be purchased at the principal Fishing Tackle Shops in London.

The articles used for making artificial flies are prettily described by Gay, in his Poem on Rural Sports, as follows:

To frame the little animal, provide  
All the gay hues that wait on female pride :  
Let nature guide thee. Sometimes golden wire  
The shining bellies of the fly require.  
The peacock's plumes thy tackle must not fail,  
Nor the dear purchase of the sable's tail ;  
Each gaudy bird some slender tribute brings,  
And lends the growing insect proper wings :  
Silks, of all colours, must their aid impart,  
And every fur promote the fisher's art.  
So the gay lady, with expensive care,  
Borrows the pride of land, of sea, of air—  
Furs, pearls, and plumes the glittering thing displays,  
Dazzles our eyes, and easy hearts betrays.



---

---

## CHAP. XXXV.

A LIST OF PALMERS,\* OR HACKLE FLIES, WITH AND WITHOUT WINGS, FOR FLY-FISHING IN EVERY MONTH DURING THE SEASON, BEGINNING WITH APRIL.

THERE are upwards of a hundred different kinds of flies, made for fly-fishing ; a selection of which I shall describe, suitable for every month during the season : and which may be purchased at a small expense at the tackle-shops, should the angler decline making them himself.

Some anglers fish with a fly in winter, but little sport is ever met with before April, (and if fish are killed they are not fit for the table,) or much later than Michaelmas, unless the weather is unusually mild ; I shall however,

\* Many anglers object to the palmer being termed a fly, because a palmer, in its natural state is first a worm or caterpillar, some of them are covered with a rough woolly substance, from which they are called wool-beds in some places, others have a number of legs, and from their continual rambling over branches, leaves of trees, cabbages, &c. they receive the general name of palmers or pilgrims, they are of various colours, some red, some black, and other colours found in gardens about the leaves of bushes and vegetables, those are generally supposed to be bred from the eggs of variegated butterflies, those that are green from the white or yellow butterfly, those beautifully spotted and found on willow trees are bred from eggs deposited by large moths. Artificial flies are called dub flies when the body is principally made of wool or mohair, when chiefly made of feathers they are called hackle flies.

in the succeeding chapter, give a list of artificial flies, for the winter months, with directions how to make them.

#### APRIL.

The cow-dung fly may be used from the first of this month, and is a killing fly to the end. The brown or dun drake is a good fly in the middle of the day, particularly if the weather proves gloomy. The horse-fly will also take fish during the whole of April, but best late in the evening.

#### MAY.

The stone-fly may be used all this month with much success, but more particularly in the mornings. The yellow May fly, commonly called the green drake, is a killing fly in the evenings. The black caterpillar fly is a good fly, and so is the black thorn fly,\* this month, in small rivers and Trout streams: it kills best in those days that succeed very hot mornings. The fly called the camlet, may be used with success all the day until the middle of June, for small fish.

The bean or thistle-fly is an excellent fly at the latter end of May and June. This fly is easily found and

\* The black-thorn fly is found on the thorn bushes as soon as the leaves come forth, this is a small black fly.

---

caught on the stems, &c. of beans and thistles in gardens and fields. They have four light brownish wings. The artificial bean or thistle-fly is sold at the tackle-shops.

This fly is known only to a few experienced Trout anglers, who use them with much success, both in dapping with the natural fly, and whipping with the artificial one. This fly takes its name of the bean or thistle-fly from its preferring and always to be found about those plants. Such anglers as have used this fly, particularly in Wales, speak highly of its merits.

#### JUNE.

The lady-fly is now a good one, particularly when the water begins to brighten after a flood. The black gnat-fly is killing in an evening, especially if the weather has been warm and showery during the day. The blue gnat is only used when the water is very fine and low. The red spinner will kill best when the water is dark, and late in the evening.

#### JULY,

The orange-fly is an excellent bait, particularly if this month proves close, hot, and gloomy. The large red ant-fly is killing for some hours in the middle of the day. The badger-fly is good in the early part of this month, and in the coolest days.

## AUGUST.

The small red and black ant-flies are good killers for three or four hours in the afternoon, and sometimes till sun-set, if it is occasionally obscured. The hazel-fly,\* by some called the Welchman's-button, or button-fly, is valuable all this month to dap with. The small fly, called the light-blue fly, is known to most fly-fishers to be a killing bait from morning till afternoon, if the weather is at all favourable.

## SEPTEMBER.

The willow-fly is most to be depended on this month, and for the remainder of the season: any of those noticed for July or August may also be used occasionally. All the flies I have enumerated are for killing Trout; but you may also take Chub and Dace with them; and perchance a Salmon. For making these flies, mohair, of various colours, is used; also seal's wool, bear's and camel's hair, sheep's wool, badger's hair, hog's down, camlets of all colours, the fur of hares, squirrels, and foxes, feathers from the neck of the game-cock, called hackles; likewise feathers from the peacock, mallard, the domestic hen, &c. &c. All these materials may be purchased at the shops.

\* The hazel fly is found on filbert and nut stems in the month of July; it has a dusky outward wing and blue under, in shape quite round, from which it is called the button fly.

---

I shall take the liberty of closing this part of my subject with Thompson's just and beautiful description of the cunning of an old Trout.

—————Should you lure  
From his dark haunt, beneath the tangled roots  
Of pendant trees, the monarch of the brook,  
Behoves you then to ply your finest art :  
Long time he, following, cautious scans the fly,  
And oft attempts to seize it, but as oft  
The dimpled water speaks his jealous fear :  
At last, while haply o'er the shaded sun  
Passes a cloud, he desperate takes the bait  
With sullen plunge : at once he darts along,  
Deep struck, and runs out all the lengthen'd line,  
Then seeks the farthest ooze, the sheltering weed,  
The cavern'd bank, his old secure abode,  
And flies aloft, and flounces round the pool,  
Indignant of the gude.





## CHAP. XXXVI.

LIST OF ARTIFICIAL FLIES, AND THE WAY TO MAKE THEM, TO KILL FROM CHRISTMAS TILL MICHAELMAS.

## RED FLY.

THIS fly is much used in Wales and Herefordshire, but better known there by the name of the *Cock a bondde*; it is made of a drake's feather, and the body of a red hackle, and the red part of squirrel's fur; it has four wings lying flat on its back: it may be varied by a black cock's hackle and silver twist. This bait is taken during February, and will kill till June, from nine or ten o'clock in the morning till three in the afternoon. These hackle flies should be tried first by the fly-fisherman, when angling in waters he is unacquainted with.

## GREEN PEACOCK-HACKLE.

The greenish herl of a peacock; warping, green silk, and a black hackle over all: this fly is taken from eight till eleven during March, as is the

## ASH-COLOURED DUN.

Dub with the roots of a fox cub's tail, warp with pale yellow silk, wings of the pale part of a starling's feather. This fly, which is also called the violet-dun, and blue-dun, is found on most rivers: it varies much

---

in its colours, according to the season of the year ; in March and September it is called the violet-dun, for it has often that hue ; in April it assumes a pale ash-colour ; in May a beautiful lemon, both body and wings ; in June and July it is a blue-black ; from this time it gradually becomes a violet-dun by the month of September.

#### PEARL OR HERON-DUN.

This fly is taken both before and after noon during April: dub, the ash-coloured herl of a heron, warp with ash-coloured silk ; wings from the short feather of a heron or coot's wing, of an ash-colour.

#### THE SPIDER-FLY

appears about the middle of April, if the season is forward, and is a good fly all the remainder of the month : the wings are made of woodcock's feathers from under the wing ; the body of lead-coloured silk, with a black cock's hackle wrapped twice or thrice round—the body is made in the shape of an ant-fly. In warm, sunny weather, particularly towards the end of April, this fly is found in clusters on beds of gravel by the sides of rivers.

#### THE SILVER TWIST HACKLE

is a good bait from about nine till eleven, in the month of May, especially if the weather is showery : dub with

---

the herl of an ostrich's feather, and warp with dark-green silver twist, and black cock's hackle over all.

THE OAK, ASH, WOODCOCK, HAWTHORN, OR CANNON FLY, ARE ONE AND THE SAME FLY.

This is the fly which is so much seen during the months of April, May, and June, on the trunks of oak, ash, and willow trees, and on the thorn-bushes near water sides, and also about piles, rails, and bridges. It is found always with the head pointing downwards: it is a good fly, but difficult to imitate, from its numerous mixed colours. It seldom drops on the water, from which it is generally believed that it does not come from a cadis, but is bred in the oak apple. Its wings are large, and lie flat on the back, like the blue bottle fly: the head is large, and of an ash-colour, the upper part of the body greyish, with a little light-blue, green, and bright-brown mixed; the tail-part greenish, with an orange mixture. No. 10 hook is large enough to make this fly on: the mottled-brown feather of a partridge makes the best wings. Two of these flies when alive, put on a No. 8 hook, are a good bait to use when dap-ping for Trout in May.

#### HUZZARD.

This fly is larger than the green-drake; the body and wings are of a fine lemon-colour, it has four wings lying close to its back; few rivers produce those flies,

but where they do, they show themselves the latter end of April, and the Trout will rise for them very freely—this is supposed to be a true water-fly, and bred from a large cadis. Dub with lemon-coloured mohair, or yellow ostrich's feather; warp with yellow gold twist, and yellow hackle over all—wings of a pale mallard's feather, yellow or lemon-colour: the wings must be large, longer than the body, and made to lie flat on the back. This is a killing fly on a blustering or windy day, until the May fly appears.

#### THE ORLE FLY

may be seen in June playing on the water, and is a good killing fly from ten or eleven o'clock till four in very warm weather, all June, especially after the May fly is gone: it has four wings lying close to the back, which should be made of a dark grizzled cock's hackle; the body of a peacock's herl, with dark-red silk.

#### THE MIDDLE BROWN FLY

is good during July and August: body of calf's hair twisted on pale yellow silk—the silk to be visible; wings of a mallard's feather.

#### PISMIRE FLY.

The body of a cock-pheasant's tail, a peacock's herl to be twisted with it, and warp with ruddy silk; wings,

the light part of a starling's feather, and to be made longer than the body.

**THE FOETID LIGHT-BROWN FLY**

is a good killer in the morning during September ; the body of seal's fur of the natural colour ; wings of ruddy-brown, long and large ; warp with ruddy silk.



## CHAP. XXXVII.

## NATURAL FLY-FISHING.

Mark well the various seasons of the year,  
How the succeeding insect race appear.

NATURAL fly-fishing is generally termed dapping, and is practised with a stoutish rod having a light stiff top, running tackle, strong gut or hair line, and No. 8 or 9 hook, for Trout\* and Chub: in this mode of fishing, it is absolutely necessary that you kneel down or stand behind a tree, bush, high weeds, or something to hide your person, or the fish will not rise at your fly or bait. When such a cover can be met with on a stream, this is a killing way of angling, particularly late in the evening. You must draw out as much line as will just reach the surface of the water, with the top

\* When dapping with a May-fly, put two or three on the hook together, with their heads standing different ways, and pass your hook through them under the wings about the middle of the insect's body. Bait the same way with the black ant fly in June, in July use the wasp fly, in August the hazel, or button fly, in September the badger fly, in March and April the thorn fly, yellow dun, and stone flies. The stone fly when in the state of a maggot is called the water cricket or creeper, and are to be found in most small stony rivers or Trout streams in April, lying under hollow stones. In those waters where this cricket is found, it will prove an excellent bait the latter end of April, put two or three on a No. 9 hook, and use it as a tripping bait in the middle of the stream. I have heard this cricket is a good bait to dap with about noon in the said month.

of your rod a little raised, and keep the bait in motion upon the surface by gently raising and lowering the top part of the rod : when a fish takes your bait, after a moment or two, strike smartly, and if not too large to endanger breaking, lift him out immediately, for by playing them while dapping, you are very like to scare away the others by exposing yourself to their sight ; but if the wind is brisk, and you stand sufficiently high on a bank or bridge, you may let several yards of line out, or as far as you can see to play the bait—more Trout are frequently killed during a moderate gale than in still weather, the May-fly is more to be depended on for killing Trout than any other. For Chub, Dace, and Bleak, the following baits will be found the most killing.

#### FOR CHUB,

The best bait in June, July, and August, is the humble-bee during the day—late in the evening, a large white moth, bred in willow trees.\* They will also take the cockchafer, grasshopper, the fly called father-long-legs, and all kinds of moth, and small butterflies,

\* Artificial moths, bees, butterflies, cockchafers, grasshoppers, &c. may be purchased at the tackle-shops. I have had much success (particularly in the river Lea) in whipping with a humble bee, both, with the natural and artificial ; this is my usual bait till towards dusk, (for Chub) then use a small black fly, which will also kill dace, The humble or bumble bee is found on flowers and blossoms in gardens and in fields ; in bean and clover fields, particularly from April to Michaelmas.

---

also large blue flies, bees, and wasps, generally preferring the largest: put two grasshoppers or father-long-legs on the hook at a time. These baits are readily procured by persons residing in the country, and easily kept alive, in a gentil-box, with some green leaves. I prefer the live-bait, and seldom use any other. You may always expect to find Chub where willow trees grow, under which they lie in the evening, waiting for any unlucky moth which may chance to settle on the water.

#### FOR DACE,

the best bait is the common house-fly: you may put two on a No. 10 hook. These flies should be kept in a bottle. Dace are caught of the largest size by dapping, concealing yourself as for Trout and Chub. Whipping for Dace frequently will tend much to improve the fly fisherman, the best artificial flies are the Black Ant and Gnat flies on a No. 10 hook. The time, the last three hours before it is dark, you may use two or three hooks at a time, tied on about three inches of fine gut, and fastened on the line about eighteen inches a part.

#### FOR BLEAK,

one common house-fly on a No. 12 or 13 hook. Dace and Bleak are also caught by whipping with an artificial fly: sometimes your sport will be increased by putting a gentil on the tip of the hook for Dace with the artificial fly, or with an artificial gentil which is easily made with fine white lambs wool, &c.



## CHAP. XXXVIII.

## RODS AND LINES.

IN respect to fly-rods, I believe the London tackle-makers can furnish as good as any that are made for sale, though I know some gentlemen are partial to those manufactured in the North and West parts of England. I have purchased rods at Exeter, for fishing in the river Ex, the Tamar, and other Trout streams in Devonshire, in compliance with the request of some friends who reside in those parts, but I never experienced any advantage in using them over what I carried with me from the metropolis.

Fly-rods are made of bamboo, cane, hickory, hazel, &c. from fifteen to eighteen feet long, the common hazel rod may be used by the young angler during his noviciate, to practise throwing a fly on land, in a field, or any other convenient place, which practice I should recommend before he casts his bait on the water. While so practising it is better to brake away the point and barb of the hook to prevent its laying hold of grass, weeds, or any thing that may be in the way which would either brake the line, or prevent the fly being thrown with any precision.

## LINES

are manufactured of hair, &c. wove, twisted, mixed, and plaited, of various lengths and strengths, purposely

---

for fly-fishing, some exceedingly fine and long, tapering gradually to the end, and to the length of forty yards: a line should not be less than thirty yards. A yard or two of fine gut, to which the hooks are fastened, is added to the line, and called the bottom.\* When fly-fishing, use as light a winch as you can, but always prefer the multiplying one.

\* To the end of this bottom is fastened the fly, and sometimes at certain distances, two more, in which case the fly at the bottom is termed the stretcher, the others droppers. The learner should, by no means attempt to fish with more than one fly on at a time.

## CHAP. XXXIX.

### WHIPPING, CASTING OR THROWING THE LINE AND BAIT.

With pliant rod, upon the pebbled brook,  
Learn skilfully to cast the feathered hook.

IN casting or throwing a fly while yet a novice, observe the following rules: having fixed the winch on the butt of your rod, draw the line through all the rings of the rod to the top, and then again as much more as will reach within a yard of your butt end from the top, the line will then of course, be nearly as long as the rod, which will be quite as much as is necessary for a learner to throw; indeed when you have attained the art of throwing a fly thirty yards to any given spot, you may use line *ad libitum*. Having fastened your bottom with the line, hold the hook by the bend in the left hand between your thumb and finger; the rod in the right hand, pointing to the left; bring the top of the rod gently round to the right, making a sweep over your right shoulder, casting forward the fly, which you let go the moment you are in the act of throwing; practice this with a moderate wind at your back, either on land or in water, till you have gained the art. Some prefer the following method of casting a fly: raise your

---

arm, and forming nearly a circle round your head from the left shoulder by waving the rod, cast the line from you before you return your arm from the head, then draw the fly lightly and gently towards the shore, have a quick and attentive eye to your bait, for if a fish rises at it, and you omit that moment striking, (a very slight movement of the wrist is sufficient to hook the fish,) the fish is lost, for they immediately discover the fraud, and throw the bait from their mouth. Thus continue to cast in your line in search, and fish every yard of water likely to afford sport, and never despair of success ; for sometimes it so happens, that after many fruitless hours spent without a fish ever rising at your fly, you will fill your bag or basket during the last hour.

The lighter your fly and line descends on the water, the greater the chance of a bite, for thereon depends much of the advantage the experienced angler has over the novice, and which is only to be acquired by practice, and love of the art. Never use more than one hook on your line at a time, till you feel fully confident you can throw your line with one, to any given distance or place : when you commence fishing any water, endeavour to keep the wind at your back, as it enables you to stand farther out of the fish's sight, and you have the additional advantage of fishing both sides of the stream, if not very broad. In small streams, where the middle is shallow, you will always find a rippling on the surface, in the shallow part : when you cast in your bait always take care to throw it to the opposite side, and

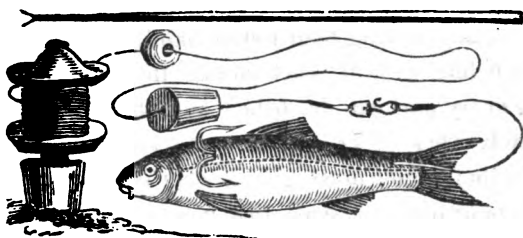
draw it slowly towards the rippling, letting it float down some distance, and if the fish like your fly, they will certainly take it; or if you see a fish rise in any part of the water you are fishing in, immediately throw your bait just beyond it, draw the fly gently over the spot where the fish rose, and if done quickly and neatly, you will generally secure the fish.

All arts and shapes the wily angler tries,  
To cloak his fraud, and tempt the finny prize.

Having given a select list of artificial flies, and also enumerated several natural ones, accompanied with observations on their respective qualities and merits, how to cast or throw a fly, &c. I shall finally take leave of the subject of fly fishing, by recommending the young angler, during his noviciate, to feel confident in pursuing the rules which I have laid down for his practice, and in the use of flies I have selected, and not to be easily put off his purpose by any person who may say that such a fly is unfit for this or that water, as some people are apt to speak hastily, for want of experience, or perhaps from local prejudice; for it will frequently happen that the fly which is the least praised, shall be found the most killing bait: therefore, learn to cast your fly skilfully, and expect sport in every stream you cast a bait in—aided by hope and patience, and a favourable breeze, you will seldom fail taking a dish of fish.

## CHAP. XL.

1.



2.

1. Rod to place and take up trimmers and dead-lines.

2. Trimmer baited with a live bait.

TRIMMER ANGLING AND CROSS FISHING FOR JACK,  
PIKE, AND EELS.

UNDER the head of Trolling I slightly noticed trimmers, night-lines, &c. the general use of which all true anglers reprobate and prohibit in the subscription waters, but in free waters *all are fish that come to net*; and as gentlemen may wish occasionally to use them in their own canals, ponds, &c. I shall here give a clear account of the best method for laying them, but first describe the method of cross-fishing for Trout and Pike.

I have classed cross-fishing with trimmer angling, as it is (in my opinion,) unfair fishing. Two persons must be engaged in cross-fishing, each having a winch and and line fixed to their rods, the end of the running line of each person must be fastened together, this then forms

the cross-line, to the middle of which tie about a yard of fine gut, on this gut the hook is tied, and baited either with a natural or artificial May-fly as judgment directs. One angler must be on this side the stream, the other opposite, each having their rod in hand, and letting out as much line as will reach across the water, by this means every part can be fished and the fly dropt immediately where a Trout is seen to rise, when a fish is hooked that angler must give or shorten line as the fish makes to or from his side; this mode of fishing, when practised by good anglers, will soon thin a Trout stream, and kill the best fish: therefore, gentlemen who grant leave for angling in a Trout water, should strictly forbid cross-fishing.

A similar method is practised in Jack or Pike fishing on substituting stronger tackle, and putting a cork float on the line hanging from the cross-line, and baiting with a live fish.

The line for a trimmer should be from sixteen to twenty yards in length, of a small, strong cord, (which is sold at the tackle-shops,) somewhat thicker than whipcord. I generally use about twenty yards of the stoutest plaited silk trolling-line, which answers the purpose best, by being less liable to kinkle or get rotten than hempen cord: to this line is fastened a double hook, which must be first tied or whipped on to a length of stout gyp—the end of the gyp, which is fastened to the line, should always be looped. About two or

---

three inches above the gymp, place a cork fast upon the line (no cork answers better than those used for wine-bottles): about two feet above the cork place a perforated bullet, and, to prevent its slipping down to the cork, tie a slip-knot, or put on a large shot close to it, and your line is complete.

The next thing is to bait the hook—this requires a little skill and attention: for Jack and Pike, live Gudgeons, Dace, Roach, and Bleak, about five inches long, are proper baits, but Gudgeons are best. Take your baiting-needle and hook it to the loop-end of the gymp to which the hook is tied, then enter the point of your needle under the skin of the Gudgeon (or any other fish) near the back, about an inch from the head, and carry it carefully between the skin and flesh to within an inch of the tail, there bring it out, and draw the gymp after it till the hooks come to the place where your needle first entered, where they are to remain; then fasten the loop-end of the gymp to the line, and all is complete, as represented in the cut at the head of this chapter. Choose a place in the water clear from weeds, &c. and cast in your trimmer in the following manner: being provided with a stick with a forked end to it, or a piece of iron made in the shape of the letter Y, made to fix into a joint of your fishing-rod, as represented in the cut with the baited book, &c.; hold the line with your left hand, take the forked stick or rod in your right, and put the forked part under the line between the bullet and cork, then you may place the bait with ease



where your judgment directs : the bullet will keep the line down, excepting the part where the cork is fastened to, which is intended to keep the bait from sinking, which, if put on the hook in the manner I have described, without much wounding, will swim strong for more than twenty-four hours. This way of laying a trimmer is superior to every other practised for Jack and Pike : by using baits and hooks somewhat smaller, it is also equally killing for Trout, Eels, Perch, Chub, &c. The common method of using the spare part of the line when a bait is cast in, is to tie the end to a stick, and fix it securely in the bank, and coil the remainder of it up so that it will readily give way when a fish strikes the bait ; but I prefer a bank-runner, which prevents the line from the chance of being entangled in the weeds, or checking a fish when taking a bait to his haunt to pouch.\* To take your line up, use the forked stick or rod in the way described for dead-lines. Another way of laying a trimmer, or trimmer-fishing, is by winding a line on a piece of round cork, of about five inches in diameter, which has a groove to hold the line ; bait the hook (which should be a single one, No. 4 or 5 tied to gymp,) with a live fish, running it through the gills, or back fin ; draw as much line from the groove as

\* After using trimmer-lines, night-lines, &c. before they are put away, be careful to dry them, or they will soon get rotten. I frequently rub mine well with a piece of wax candle, which strengthens the lines, and preserves them, in some measure, from the effects of wet.

will let the bait swim a little below mid-water. These cork trimmers may be thrown into ponds or still waters, and left to swim about, as they may be recovered with the assistance of a boat, or your drag-hook: but if in a river, tie two or three yards of cord to the peg in the cork, and fastened it to a stick which you fix in the bank. These trimmers are called men-of-war trimmers, by many anglers. The tackle-shops keep them ready fitted with a line.

#### LEGER-LINE OR TRIMMER, FOR JACK, EELS, &c.

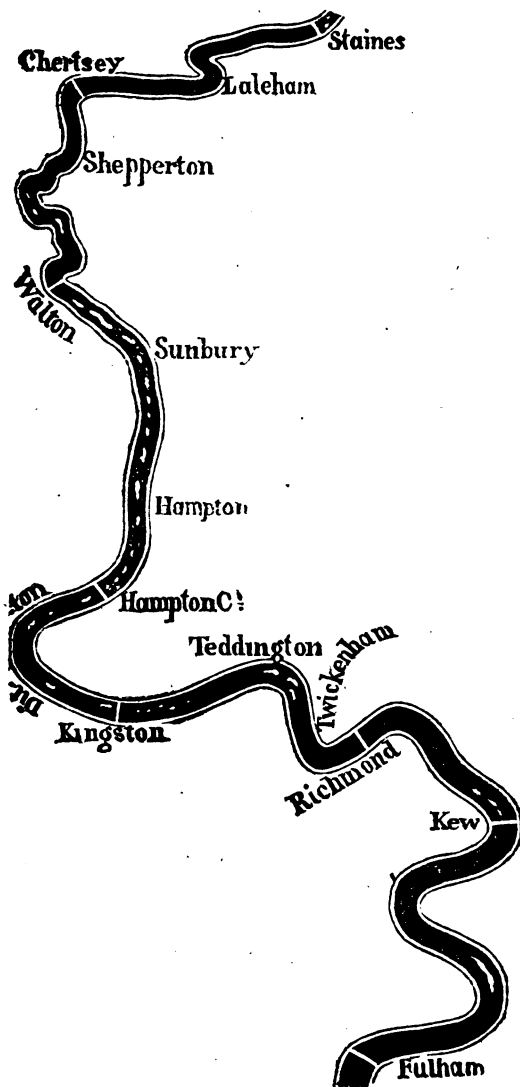
The leger-line is made of plaited silk, whip or lay-cord, about twelve yards in length, to which affix a hook tied to gyp, and about a foot above fasten a bullet, or a piece of flat lead, perforated, which is to keep the line from drifting away, and leave the hook loose to be a little agitated by the stream, and the bait on it to play about. The bait for this line should be a live Gudgeon, or some other small fish: if a single hook is used, hook the fish by the lip; if a double one, introduce the gyp at the shoulders near the back, and bring it out near the tail, taking care not to wound the flesh, but only entering it under the skin, and the bait will be as lively as ever.—(I would advise the angler always to have a swivel fixed to the line, either for trolling, trimmers, or leger-lines.) Stick a forked stick in the bank, to which tie the line, and let it hang over the fork thereof, the remainder of the line coil up,

and so lay it, that if a fish draws the line it may readily give way ; but a leger-line fastened to running tackle on a rod is more pleasant, and also more likely to kill fish ; cast in the bait, lay down your rod, and unlock the winch, and it will kill without farther care. If a worm is used instead of a fish for a bait, let it be a well scoured lob, but small fish are much the best bait, for the small Eels seldom touch them, but will often nibble away part of a worm, if you use a dead Gudgeon, or any other small fish for bait, put it on the hook exactly as described for trolling with the gorge.





# MAP OF THE RIVER THAMES.



---

---

## CHAP. XLI.

### THE RIVER THAMES,\* AND ITS FISHERY.

The noble Thames, for ships and fishes fam'd,  
The queen of rivers by the poet named.

THIS river consists principally of the united streams of the Isis and Thame. The former rising on the confines of Gloucestershire, a little to the south-west of Cirencester, and becomes navigable at Lechdale ; near Oxford it receives the Charwel, and continues its course by Abingdon to Dorchester, unites with the Thame. After this junction, the united stream continues its course by Wallingford, Reading, Marlow, Henley, Eton, Windsor, Hampton, Richmond, Kew, and Brentford, to London ; and below London-bridge is covered for several miles with vast numbers of ships from all nations. Proceeding on to the sea, it passes Greenwich, Woolwich, and Gravesend, below which it becomes of vast magnitude, and receives the Medway not far from its mouth.

• A German poet thus describes the banks of the Thames.

We saw so many woods and princely bowers,  
Sweet fields, brave palaces, and stately towers ;  
So many gardens, drest with curious care,  
That Thames with Royal Tiber may compare.

In describing the river Thames fishery, I shall commence at Staines, a pleasant market town about seventeen miles west of London ; to which place the jurisdiction of the lord mayor of London over the Thames extends, for the preservation of the river and fish. At this place, and all other parts of the Thames under the above jurisdiction, angling is prohibited from the first of March until the first of June : March, April, and May, are called *fence months*, during which time all fresh-water fish cast their spawn, the Trout excepted (which spawns about October.) These months are, therefore, properly held sacred, that the future fish may not be destroyed.

The principal house at Stains is the Bush. Boats may be hired here, and good sport met with in angling near the bridge : many Barbel weighing near twenty pounds each have been caught here. Between Staines and Laleham are some places suited to bank-fishing.

#### LALEHAM.

is a small village, but extremely rural, and pleasantly situated ; the river is very narrow and shallow in this part : on these shallows many fish are taken by whipping, particularly a delicious fish called the Skegger, supposed to be of the Salmon species. You whip for them with a fly rod, light line, and No. 10 hook, baited with a gentle ; a red palmer is also a good bait : these fish are allowed to be caught during the fence months,

---

on the principle that they are going to leave the river, probably never to return, as the time of their migration is during the fence months. In the summer, Chub and Dace are taken here in the same way of angling, substituting a fly for the gentle. Between Laleham and Chertsey-bridge, good Barbel, Roach, &c. are caught in a boat, and from the banks.

#### CHERTSEY-BRIDGE

is about twenty miles from London, some distance from the town: the house most frequented by anglers, is the Cricketers, situated between the bridge and Chertsey, but there are several other houses in the neighbourhood affording good accommodation. Boats may be hired here for angling in the deeps, (and tackle, if a visitor should be deficient) with a boatman to attend: the customary charge on these occasions, for the day, is five shillings, and a dinner for the man.

Chertsey deeps contain plenty of fine Barbel, Roach, Dace, &c. also about the bridge, and its wharfings, there is good angling, which may be practised without a boat; here you may take Perch, Roach, Dace, Chub, Bleak, and sometimes a Trout: from hence to Shepperton, through the meadows, you will find several capital swims, where I have had excellent sport with Chub and Perch, both early and late, and have also taken many Roach, Dace, and Bleak in the eddies, when the water was a little coloured.



## SHEPPERTON

is near nineteen miles from London, and though a small village, yet the angler will find every accommodation and comfort he can desire: there are two inns in the village, the Anchor, which is an excellent house, and the King's Arms, a good one of the second order.

*En passant*, I beg my best compliments to Mr. Cracknell, who has frequently increased the angler's pleasure by the gratuitous effusions of his good-natured muse, in celebrating their achievements, particularly in the following song on the female angler, who was a friend of the author's.

## THE FEMALE ANGLER.

From town I walk'd to take the air,  
Shun smoke and noise of coaches;  
I saw a lovely damsel fair,  
Angling for Dace and Roaches.

Close by a brook, with line and hook,  
Which curiously was baited,  
Attentively the maid did look,  
While for a bite she waited.

Struck with her charms, I nearer drew,  
To view this lovely creature;  
The line into the brook she threw,  
But oh! with such good nature.

When me this charming girl espied,  
She seem'd intimidated  
Don't be afraid sweet maid, I cried,  
Cupid your hook has baited.

My hand and heart, sweet nymph, are thine,  
If you will but accept them;  
And all I have to thee resign,  
But die if you reject them.

This, and much more, to her I said,  
She reply'd, she must away;  
Her friends would think too long she stay'd,  
Then sweetly smil'd, and bid good day.

I soon gain'd her's and friends' consent,  
That Delia should be my bride;  
In a few months to church we went,  
And the happy knot was ty'd.

Now pass my days in sweet content,  
Blest with her fond embraces;  
And Delia owns she does not repent  
Angling for Roach and Daces.

Shepperton deeps are well stored with fish; the new deep particularly, is a fine steady swim, full of heavy Barbel, Chub, Roach and Dace: above this swim are Gudgeon scowers, which, with the deeps, are fished in a boat. From opposite the deeps down to the ferry there is good bank-fishing for Perch, Roach, Dace, and Chub: near the ferry, on the shallows, I have taken several Pope or Ruff, and some Trout. From this ferry to Walton-bridge is good Perch-fishing from the banks, and in the dead water close to the paling of Oatlands Park the angler will find Jack, Perch, and other fish, which have been driven from the river in the time of floods; in the spring, particularly, many good Jack and Perch are taken here.

On the south side of the river is Oatlands, the beautiful park and seat of His Royal Highness the Duke of York, about a mile from Shepperton: Her Royal Highness the Duchess sometimes takes the diversion of angling, and one of the boatmen, residing in this village, named Dabler, receives an annual salary for attending Her Royal Highness on those occasions. The family of the Perdues, (boatmen) has for many years deservedly stood well in the estimation of the anglers visiting Shepperton.

On the north side, between Shepperton and Walton-bridge, is Halliford, a small scattered place. The Ship is the house generally used by the anglers who fish in this neighbourhood.

At Walton, likewise, there are some good deeps and swims, and on the opposite side to Hampton, by Sunbury, are many good places for angling in boats, or on the side of the river, for Perch, Roach, Chub, &c. particularly one deep hole and eddy, near Walton-bridge, on the Sunbury side, where Roach are killed, both numerous and heavy. At Walton, the Duke's Head is the house mostley resorted to by anglers; there are also boats and experienced boatmen, always ready at Walton to attend the sportsman.

#### HAMPTON

is a most delightful village, pleasantly situated on a rise, commanding beautiful views over the Thames, Moulsey-

---

hurst, and the adjacent country ; and, being only fifteen miles from town, is frequently visited by anglers, who find every comfort and accomodation they can wish at the Red Lion, and at the Bell. There is also a circulating library, and a fishing-tackle shop at Hampton, with several boats and boatmen, ever ready to attend, or let their boats to anglers.

Hampton deeps are justly famous for a variety of large fish, particularly Barbel, Chub, Perch, Roach, and Dace: Trout are also frequently taken. Near to the side of the late Mr. Garrick's lawn and gardens, and in the meadows, at a short distance from the west side of the town, there are some fine holes, swims, and eddies, abounding with Perch, Chub, Roach, and some small Barbel, which can be fished very conveniently from the banks without the assistance of a boat ; and when the water is a little coloured, or if it be late in the evening, many good fish may be taken. These holes may be easily found by strangers, from observing the places in the banks where clay has been dug for mixing ground-bait, and also by noticing where the ground is a good deal trodden.

#### HAMPTON-COURT.

Two miles nearer London is Hampton-court and bridge ; where, in a very deep water, called the water-

gallery, (not far from the well-known Toy tavern) is excellent Roach, and especially Perch-fishing, either from the bank or a boat.

#### THAMES-DITTON

is opposite Hampton-court on the other side of the river, a very pleasant place, about thirteen miles from London, and is generally well attended by anglers: many good fish are taken here in boat or punt-fishing, chiefly Barbel, Chub, Roach, and Dace. The Swan is the house most frequented by anglers; and Mr. Lock has the merit of giving general satisfaction to his visitors, and the pleasure of seeing them frequently take away many pounds of Barbel.

#### KINGSTON AND HAMPTON-WICK.

Kingston is a good market town, twelve miles from London, parted by the Thames from Hampton-Wick. Much good sport is met with by anglers who resort here for Barbel, Roach, Perch, Gudgeon, and Dace-fishing, particularly in the Gudgeon season;\* for which purpose several boats are kept at both these place.† Between

\* At Kingston, some years since, I frequently met a blind gentleman fishing in a punt, attended by a servant: the gentleman was an experienced angler, and killed a fish in good style. His servant baited the hook, and called a bite.

† The attention of the boatman named Brown, at the Wick, is well known to the anglers who fish about Kingston-bridge, and its vicinity.

---

here and Twickenham is some good fishing from the banks, particularly in Teddington meadows, where the fisherman, by noticing where his brother anglers have tracked the ground, will readily find several favourite holes and swims well stored with Roach, Dace, Perch, and Gudgeons; but during the summer months these holes are generally choked with weeds.

#### TWICKENHAM.

“ Slow let us trace the matchless vale of Thames,  
 Far winding up to where the muses haunt  
 In Twit’nam’s, —————  
 ————— to royal Hampton’s pile,  
 To Clermont’s terrac’d height, and Esher’s groves.”

This is a charming spot, about eleven miles from the metropolis, and has two good houses, where the angler may take up his abode, and have every attention paid him, namely, the King’s Head and the George. Angling at Twickenham is mostly practised in boats, which are easily procured, with baits, lines, and other requisites, by inquiring at your inn, or for Mr. Simcock: the lover of Roach and Dace-fishing may here find the best sport—a few Barbel are occasionally taken, but not large. The best part of the season is in the autumn, when Roach and Dace retire to the deeps, which are extensive off Twickenham. The next place is

#### RICHMOND,

where Barbel, Roach, Dace, Perch, and Gudgeons are

caught from the banks, as well as in boats—from hence to Isleworth, and its vicinity, is good Perch-fishing. Roach and Dace are also taken all the way from Richmond-bridge to Kew-bridge, by angling off the horse-path; but it is necessary that the angler should be apprized that the tide flows up as high as Teddington, and that during its ebb, and at high water, few fish of any kind are taken. The tide certainly does not affect the water much except at the full and new moon, at which time it is high water at Richmond about five o'clock: by noticing this, the angler from London may prevent being disappointed in his expectations of sport, and save himself a profitless journey.

The best place for bank-fishing at Richmond is between the bridge and the Pigeons public-house: this part has lately been cleansed and deepened: good sport is often met with in angling here for Roach, Dace, Perch, &c. Barbel are also frequently taken.

#### KEW AND PUTNEY BRIDGES.

Under the arches of both these bridges very fine Roach are taken: the proper time to angle here is at or near low water. From the bridges to London there is but little bank-fishing, from the strength of the tide and current.

#### BATTERSEA, WESTMINSTER, AND BLACKFRIAR'S BRIDGES.

Under and about the starlings of all these bridges many large Roach are caught, at or near low water.

---

Fishing in these places, of course, can only be accomplished in a boat, which you may hire for a shilling an hour.

As the rivers Thames and Lea are the chief sources whence the London anglers derive their amusement, I shall state the seasons when the fish feed best in each river, and by attending to which the inexperienced angler may save many fruitless journies, and know best how to divide his time, and enjoy his amusement in both rivers. And first of the Thames.

Angling is prohibited (as before observed,) in the Thames during the months of March, April, and May. In June commences Gudgeon-fishing, and continues till the latter end of July, during which time innumerable fine Gudgeons are taken, frequently from thirty to fifty dozen in a day's angling, and also many Perch and Dace. In the latter end of July the Barbel begin to feed, and continue till October. From Michaelmas till Christmas is the best season for catching heavy Roach.

Having thus brought the angler safely to town, I shall next beg his attention to a description of the river Lea, its fishery, and places adjacent.



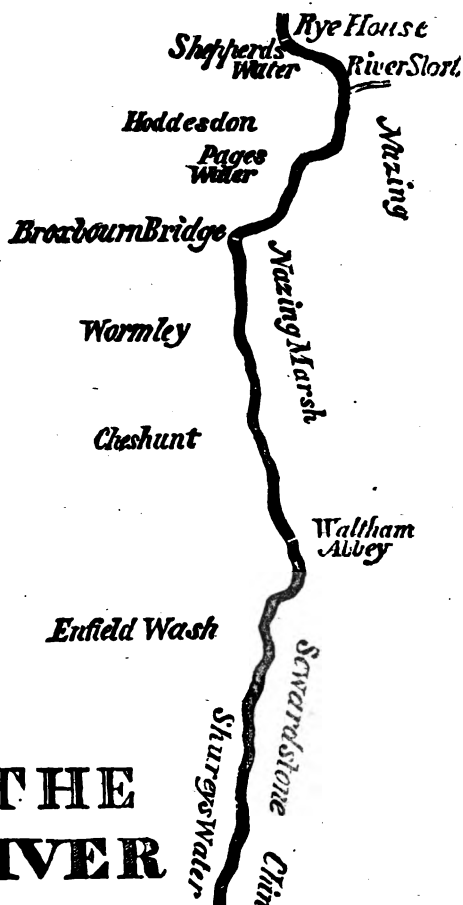
## CHAP. XLII.

### THE RIVER LEA AND FISHERY DESCRIBED.

The gulfy Lea its sedgy tresses rears.

THE river Lea takes its rise in Bedfordshire, and is navigable from the county town of Hertford to Blackwall and Limehouse, a distance of thirty miles, dividing the counties of Hertfordshire and Middlesex from Essex, where it empties itself into the Thames, near London: this river, though but a small stream when compared with the Thames, deserves the admiration of the natural philosopher, and the lover of angling, for the beauty of the surrounding country, and the valuable fish it contains. The valley through which it flows, for many miles, is most delightfully picturesque; the towns, villages, and seats on the west, the forest scenery and bold hills on the east, are not surpassed by any I am acquainted with: the historian, and lover of antiquities, also, will here find something worthy of investigation. In the time of the great King Alfred it was of considerable consequence, for we are informed, that during his reign the Danes, with a hostile fleet of twenty vessels, filled with troops, arrived, and sailed up this river eighteen or twenty miles, spreading terror and alarm around; but these vessels were entirely destroyed, with most of their crews.

# THE RIVER





---

The fish, I believe, are better protected and fed in this than in most other navigable rivers, both by nature and art ; several miles are preserved for the angler's diversion, for which he pays an annual sum by way of subscription, and every care is taken to protect the fish from poachers: the size and fine flavour of the Pike, Trout, Carp, Perch, Eels, Gudgeons, and various other species, prove that nature has not been sparing in providing for the inhabitants of the river Lea.

The following rules form the basis on which these subscription waters are regulated and protected, varying from ten shillings and six-pence per annum, to twenty-one shillings. A ticket and view of the Horse and Groom Subscription-house will be found opposite the article Horse and Groom Subscription-house.

1. That the subscribers to this fishery do pay annually, on the 1st of March, the sum of \_\_\_\_\_ for leave to angle in this water.
2. That any member found using a net, snare, or trimmer in this water, shall forfeit and pay the sum of \_\_\_\_\_ and be excluded.
3. That no member shall refuse to show another his ticket when asked, nor give impertinent or abusive language, under the penalty of \_\_\_\_\_
4. That no member shall troll before the first Saturday in July, nor after the 28th of February, under the penalty of \_\_\_\_\_ for each offence.

5. That it shall be understood, by every member, that the renter of the water has liberty to catch Eels, but no other fish, except for baits; nor is he allowed to sell any fish (except Eels) on any pretence, under the penalty of five pounds for every offence.
6. The fines, forfeitures, and penalties to go towards defraying the expenses of the annual dinner of the subscribers to this fishery.
7. Resolved, that no member shall wrangle, or disturb the peace of the company, in or out of the house, under the penalty of for each offence.

N.B. Day tickets allowed at one shilling each for angling, but day subscribers not to troll.

#### HERTFORD

is a borough, and the county town of Hertfordshire, twenty-one miles from London, a place of great note formerly, but now exceedingly dull, except at the assize time, or when an election for a member of parliament takes place. The angler may take some good Trout, Dace, &c. in this neighbourhood, and fish the river Lea to Ware, about a mile distant.

#### WARE

is a large and populous market town, on the High North Road, twenty miles from London, situated close to the river Lea, and has many fine Trout, Eels, &c. in the water round it: this river is a free fishery from Ware to Stanstead, between which towns you pass near

---

the little village of Amwell, celebrated in sentimental poetry by Mr. Scott, and where there is a curious epitaph in the church-yard, much read and considered—it is as follows:

That which a being was, what does it show ?  
That being which it was, it is not now ;  
To be what 'tis, is not to be : you see  
That which now is not, shall a being be

#### KING'S ARMS.

The next place to stanstead is Mr. Shepherd's, the King's Arms, near the Rye-house.\* At this place I would strongly recommend the angler to take up his quarters as long as his convenience will allow him, for here he will meet with good sport in fishing, and the best accommodation at the house, which is a neat inn, and much frequented by the lovers of angling. In consequence of its distance from the metropolis, (eighteen miles,) the company which use this house is more select than at many others nearer London ; the house has a very inviting and pretty appearance as you approach it in passing over the New River, and the charming corn fields, or downs, near Hoddesdon, from which it is distant about a mile : this house and water are surrounded by numerous woodland rural walks and

\* The Rye-house, (now a workhouse) is famous for being the place intended for the assassination of Charles the Second, on his return this way from Newmarket.—*See Hume's History of England.*

rides ; there are also some ancient ruins in the neighbourhood worth the antiquarian's research.

The whole of this water is well stored with a variety of fish, and the angler will meet with many deep still holes, swims, and eddies, where, if he possesses tolerable skill, he cannot fail getting some fine well-fed Jack, Pike, Carp, Chub, Gudgeons, Roach, Perch, Eels, &c. The several dates and drawings in the house, will show what kind of fish in point of size, the angler is likely to meet with in this water. The people belonging to the house generally direct the stranger to those parts of the river where he is likely to have sport. That part of the water from the Oak-tree Field,\* is a favourite spot of mine, where the angler will find a considerable length of a gentle steady swim, free from weeds, seldom less than ten feet deep, with a clear level bottom, plentifully stored with fine Chub, Roach, Perch, Jack, Pike, &c. and entirely removed from the barge-path. There is also good Roach-fishing from the barge-path between the four clap-styles ; and in the pool or tumbling-bay called Black-pool, October-hole, &c. by Crane's-lock there is generally a good Trout or two, and heavy Carp and Chub. In this water Roach are caught with black scurf, or spots on their gills and bodies, different from any of the specie I have ever met with elsewhere.

\* In this water a friend of mine killed a Chub, in the month of February, weighing four pounds and a half, with a single hair line and No. 12 hook, baited with one gentle, and landed his fish without the assistance of a net.

## HODDESDON

is a cheerful, clean, healthy town, seventeen miles from London, and most pleasantly situated, commanding several fine views. Here is a circulating library, well stocked with books, stationary, &c. several good inns,\* and, among others, Batty's, the Black Lion, is noted for home-brewed ale of a superior strength and flavour. Stage coaches pass through here almost every hour, which gives to the town a bustling and lively appearance. Many anglers who visit these parts put up at Hoddesdon, and go to Shepherd's, near the Rye-house, or other parts of the river Lea, fish during the day, and return in the evening to their respective inns. If the angler should meet with loss by breaking of lines, hooks, &c. while fishing in the waters near Hoddesdon, he may get assistance from an ingenious tradesman and good angler in the town, named Sherrall, who is ever ready to relieve a brother of the angle when in distress. This town is chiefly supplied with water from a fountain, which empties itself through an urn, held under the arm of a female stone statue, which stands in the middle of the town, and is thus noticed by Prior :

A nymph with an urn, that divides the highway,  
And into a puddle throws the mother of tea.

\* At the George inn waggons, containing wooden tanks or wells used to stop, for the last time, on their journey to London from the fens in Cambridgeshire and Lincolnshire. These tanks contained Jack, Pike, Carp and Tench, for the London market, where the fish were delivered alive; for which purpose the water was changed several times during the journey, and the last time at Hoddesdon.



**PAGE'S WATER.**

This water joins Shepherd's. Page's, though a public house, is lonely, and not much suited for the lodging and accommodation of the angler, yet there is good fishing here at some seasons of the year, for Pike, Chub, Roach, &c. and also in the stream called the Mill-river, running across the meads to the westward of the Lea, particularly at a place called Calais-point, or Breeches-maker's-hole. This stream supplies Hoddesdon and Broxbourn-mills, and empties itself into the Lea near Broxbourn-bridge. Between Page's water and Scorer's at Broxbourn, part of the river belongs to Nazing parish, in which is good trolling and Perch-fishing, particularly in that part called the Gull.

**BROXBOURN.**

The Crown, at Broxbourn-bridge, is situated close to the river, and presents a cheerful appearance as you approach it, from the number of fowls, pigeons, cows, &c. feeding around the house. The angler and contemplative man may here find a home; every attention is paid to render his situation comfortable by the most obliging behaviour, cleanliness, &c. of the proprietors, Mrs. Scorer and Sons, who rent the waters above and below the Crown, the former meeting Page's water, the latter down to the King's Weir.\* In this water

\* That part of Scorer's water which runs through Nazing-marsh contains some fine deep holes. Here the late much-respected Mr. Walker took eleven Chub, during a few hours' angling, each fish

---

are large Jack, Pike, Chub, Perch, Roach, Dace, Eels, &c.: this house is also frequented by the gunner, as there is a good deal of game around, with wild-fowl, and many snipes in the marshes.

#### CARTHAGENA WATER.

The Carthagena-water, or tumbling-bay, contains numerous large Jack, Pike, Chub, Perch, and sometimes a fine Trout. There is good Roach and Chub-fishing at the island, and by the willows, near the house; also in Nazing-marsh,† and round Mr. Waller's mill.

#### WALTHAM ABBEY.

From the King's Weir to Waltham Abbey you may take Jack, Chub, Roach, &c. From Waltham Abbey to Bleakhall there is no particular place to detain the

weighing from three to three pounds and a half: his baits were gentles, the line fine gut, quill float, and No. 10 hook.—The largest Trout taken in this water lately was killed by Mr. Laurie, with a palmer-fly: this Trout weighed five pounds and a quarter. The largest Chub, weighing six pounds and a quarter, was caught by Mr. Caruthers, by dapping with a bee.

† — Where black Nazing's lonely tower o'erlooks  
Her verdant fields.

Scott.

angler, since the Swan and Pike\* public-house and water have become private or government property, the proprietor not being very willing to grant permission to the angler to try his skill. To the left, near Sewardstone-mills, stands the deserted unlicensed public-house, the Crown, formerly much frequented: about a mile further, near Chinkford, is Shury's (late Carpenter's), subscription-water and house, at a guinea per annum; but this house has no accommodation or license, therefore the angler must bring bait for himself as well as for the fish when he visits this place.

\* The waters lately belonging to the Swan and Pike were well stored with Trout, Barbel, Pike, and other fish. About five years since, Mrs. John Astley (of the Royal Amphitheatre, Westminster-bridge,) killed a fine Trout here, weighing nearly ten pounds: she took it by spinning a Minnow, and I must confess that the lady killed her fish in high style. Mr. Holmes (of Newington), a brother of the angle, landed it.

The Swan and Pike used often to be visited by the late worthy Mr. Kirby, who was, I believe, a descendant of the Kirbys, so well known to anglers for their improvements in fishing-hooks. It is thought that Prince Rupert, nephew to Charles the First, taught Kirby the art of tempering steel, and I think with great probability, as the Prince was a man of science, and was living in Beech-lane, Barbican, when Kirby kept a shop in Golden-lane. A part of the garden, &c. belonging to Prince Rupert, still remains, and is now occupied by a carpenter of the name of Brame, from whose premises I have frequently viewed those remains of former splendour.

---

**BLEAKHALL, OR COOK'S FERRY,\***

is a house for the accommodation of anglers, and is situated close to the river, in a sequestered rural spot, near Edmonton, about eight miles from London, and for many years well known to, and frequented by, the lovers of angling: the waters are well stored with fine large Carp, Barbel, Chub, Jack, Pike, Roach, Gudgeons, Perch, Eels, &c. which are preserved for the diversion and amusement of anglers at the annual subscription of fifteen shillings, or one shilling for a day ticket.

**BOWERBANK'S WATER, FORMERLY JEREMY'S  
FERRY.**

Adjoining this is private property, belonging to Mr. Bowerbank, abounding with fine Barbel, Chub, Roach, Dace, &c. who, though an admirer of angling, and a skilful angler, will not permit trolling in his water; but cheerfully and politely allows angling for Carp, Barbel, Roach, Chub, &c. to any person of decent address, who makes application for that purpose.

**BANNISTER'S WATER.**

Below Mr. Bowerbank's is a division called Bannister's-water, with a public-house belonging to it,

\* Before the bridge was built at this place, it was a ferry, known formerly by the name of Cook's ferry. Old Matthew Cook was well known to the old anglers for his rudeness and eccentricity, and for his love of the feline race; for he used to keep many cats about the house, much to the vexation and inconvenience of his guests: the average number was fourteen.

situated on the cross-road from Tottenham High Cross to Walthamstow, Woodford, and Epping-forest. There are many fish taken in the waters round this house during the season, which are much frequented, being but a short distance from town. From hence, to the Horse and Groom at Lea-bridge, the river is entirely free for angling, to the extent of about two miles, passing by Mr. Pratt's mill, Tottenham, the High-bridges, Clapton, and High-hill ferry, to the Jolly Angler public-house, near Lea-bridge.—Note, about Bannister's-water, Pratt's-mill, and on the East side of the river to the High-bridge Clapton, are many holes in the banks, where fine large Eels are taken by snigling.

#### THE HORSE AND GROOM SUBSCRIPTION-HOUSE

is most pleasantly situated a short distance from Lea-bridge, close to the river-side, commanding extensive views over the marshes to Walthamstow, Epping forest, Low-Layton, &c. To the latter place is a charming ride, in summer, over the marshes, particularly during hay-making, after which season the marshes are well stocked with oxen, cows, horses, and other cattle, which much enliven the scene during the remainder of the summer; in the winter, snipes, herons, and wild-fowl are to be met with in these marshes. The Horse and Groom being so short a distance from the metropolis (about three miles and a half only,) induces the



W. L. V. & Co. 38 Bridge Street, London.

# LEA BRIDGE FISHERY.

No. [REDACTED]

This Ticket entitles

Mr. \_\_\_\_\_

to Angle in the Water belonging to

**THE HORSE & GROOM,**

**Sea Bridge.**

From  
Lady Day 181.....  
To  
Lady Day 181.....

*L. Parry*



lovers of angling and rural scenery often to visit this house, which may be done with little expense, either of time or money; the Clapton stages coming within half a mile of Lea-bridge every hour in the day, from eight o'clock in the morning till eight at night, thereby enabling the London angler to enjoy his favourite amusement for a few hours daily, when he would otherwise be deprived, from the distance of other waters. The proprietor of the house and waters (Mr. Sparrey) I have always found extremely desirous of giving every assistance to promote the success of the angler, and very attentive to accommodate them in the best possible manner his house will afford. The water belonging to the Horse and Groom is preserved solely for the use of subscribers, at ten shillings and sixpence per annum, or one shilling per day.

The water extends about a mile, running through Layton and Hackney marshes; and perhaps, no mile of water in the river Lea contains more fish, or a greater variety.\* The following fish are taken by angling in

\* Although this water contains such a variety of fine fish, and possesses so many holes, swims, and sources for their protection, feed, &c. yet I must not hide from my readers that it requires much skill to kill fish here, for the fish are so well fed by nature, that they are not easily induced to take a bait, unless of the most choice kind, and attached to the best and finest tackle; and again, as birds grow wild and shy by being frequently shot at, so the fish in this and all other waters that are daily angled, become timid and suspicious. Many are hooked by unskilful anglers and get away again, consequently they are not so ready to take a bait another time. It often happens that

P



this water—Jack, Pike, Carp, Tench, Perch, Barbel, Chub, Bream, Roach, Dace, Bleak, Gudgeon, and, per chance, Salmon and Trout, Eels, &c.: the Carp, in particular are remarkably fine, and but few I believe, are to be met with in any other part of the river Lea; the Gudgeons are also unusually large in this water, and the number caught by the anglers daily, is astonishing. There are numerous deep holes, swims, eddies, and scowers, in this water, known by the names of the Half-moon, Broad-swim, the Potatoe-hole, Clark's-ditch, Johnson's-swim, the Friends, &c. There are several Salmon in this part of the river Lea, which frequently disturb the quiet angler when fishing for Roach. At the Horse and Groom are fitted up several small closets, called lockers, to hold the rods and tackle of such anglers who frequent it, secured by locks and keys, which are severally kept by each individual, on paying a small remuneration for the use thereof: it is scarcely necessary for me to point out the great convenience of these lockers to the angler who has ever been noticed when carrying his rod through the streets.

#### WHITE-HOUSE WATER.

For many years this was a favourite and well-when a good fish is taken, you will find several marks about it where it has before been hooked. Yet a good angler would feel more gratification in killing a brace of heavy fish (suppose Barbel) in such a water, than in killing twenty while sitting confined in a punt on the Thames, and angling with a leger line, where little more than strength of tackle is requisite.

frequented place by the lovers of angling of the old school, but it is now much neglected, particularly since the dwelling-house was consumed by fire, which happened about two years since. Between this water and Bromley are several streams or branches of the river running through the marshes and meadows, and all join or fall into Bow-creek, at Bromley-mills.

At Stratford, Bromley, and West-Ham, a great many good Roach, Dace, Flounders, &c. are taken in the mill-pools and waters around; but it is very unpleasant fishing, the tide leaving the banks extremely dirty and slippery: the angler is also continually annoyed by the many passengers, as to "what sport?" "do the fish bite?" and other rude interrogations. About a mile below Bromley at Blackwall, the river Lea is lost in the majestic Thames.\*

The months of March, April, and May, are the three best in the year for angling in the river Lea, especially for Carp, Perch, Barbel, Chub, Roach, Dace, Eels, and Gudgeons: during these months, many exceeding fine ones are taken, fine Gudgeons are caught, and some few Trout, Tench, &c. During part of June and July, few fish are taken in the Lea. From August till Michaelmas is the second season for Barbel, Carp, Chub, Perch, &c. From Michaelmas till February there is very little sport in angling for Roach in this river, within ten miles of London, (except about Bromley mills and Lea-

\* See observations on the best time of fishing, the rivers Thames and Lea—page 227.

bridge), but you may troll, and expect to take good Jack and Pike till March in every part of this river.

The river Lea affords many more conveniencies to angle from its banks than the Thames, and is therefore preferred by many anglers, who object to be confined in a boat or punt, which must be submitted to, generally speaking, in fishing in the Thames, within several miles of the metropolis, particularly if you angle for Barbel.

The rivers Thames and Lea, with others of note, are thus comprehended in one of Mr. Drayton's sonnets :

Our floods' queen Thames, for ships and swans is crown'd,  
And stately Severn for her shore is praised ;  
The chrystal Trent for fords and fish renown'd,  
And Avon's fame to Albion's cliffs is raised :  
Carlegion Chester vaunts her holy Dee,  
York many wonders of her Ouse can tell ;  
The Peak her Dove, whose banks so fertile be,  
And Kent will say her Medway does excel :  
Cotswold commends her Isis to the Tame,  
Our northern borders boast of Tweed's fair flood ;  
Our western parts extol their Willy's fame,  
And the old Lea brags of the Danish blood.



---

---

**CHAP. XLIII.****RIVERS SEVERN, TRENT, DOVE, MEDWAY, &c.  
DESCRIBED.**

**THERE** are more than three hundred rivers in England and Wales, I shall describe the course of some of the most considerable, and notice the fish in them with which they most abound.

**SEVERN.**

This river takes its rise in Montgomeryshire, in Wales, and runs through part of Shropshire, Staffordshire, and Worcestershire, passes below Worcester, and runs on to the city of Gloucester; this river abounds with Salmon, Trout, Eels, and other fish.

**TRENT.**

This river first shows itself in Staffordshire, and in its course it passes Nottingham, Newark, and Hull, to Gainsborough, it now loses its name by mixing in the Humber, which falls into the sea at Flamborough-head: this is a noble river, and well stocked with Jack, Carp, Eels, Barbel, Chub, Perch, Roach, Flounders, &c. Many small rivers help to supply the Trent during its course, all well stored with Trout, namely, the Dove, the Sour, the Idle, the Leen, &c.

**DOVE.**

This river rises near the Three Shire Stones in Derbyshire, passes on to Ashburn, from thence falls into the Trent: this little river abounds with Trout, and also Grayling.

**MEDWAY.**

This river rises in Sussex, through which county and Kent, it flows to Rochester and Chatham, passing by Maidstone, &c. and is well stored with Salmon and other fish.

**STOUR.**

This river rises in Kent, runs past Ashford, round Canterbury, from thence to Hackington Forditch, and continues its course to Sandwich, and there emptys itself into the sea: this river abounds with Trout.

**OUSE.**

This river rises in Oxfordshire, proceeds to Buckingham, gliding on to Bedford and Huntingdon, from thence to Ely, and falls into the sea at Lynn, in Norfolk. The Ouse is well stored with Jack, Pike, Perch, Eels, &c.

**CAM.**

This river rises in Cambridgeshire, runs by Cambridge, and after some miles is lost in the river Ouse:

the Cam does not boast of Trout, but it may of Jack, Pike, Carp, Perch, Eels, Roach, &c. There are many large pieces of water near this river, known by the names of Meer's Lakes, &c. full of fine Tench and various other fish : also in Romseymere, near Huntingdon, famous for Eels and Pike.

#### TAMER.

This river divides the counties of Cornwall and Devonshire, passes Launceston, Saltash, and Plymouth-Dock, and falls into Plymouth-Sound. This river contains more Salmon than any other in the West of England.

#### EX.

This river rises in Somersetshire, passes Tiverton and Exeter, and empties itself in the sea at Exmouth ; during its course it takes the waters of several streams, and is well stored with Salmon Trout, Eels, &c.

#### ITCHIN.

This river rises in Hampshire, and passing by Ramsey and Winchester, and falls into the sea at Southampton ; this river abounds with Salmon and Trout,

#### WYE.

This river rises in Montgomeryshire, passes by Hereford and Monmouth, and falls into the Severn below Chepstow. This river is stored with Trout and Grayling.

## CHAP. XLIV.

THE RIB, STORT, NEW RIVER, MOLE, RODING,  
AND WEY.

### THE RIB RIVER, HERTS.

THIS little river runs through Hertfordshire, passing by Hertford, Ware Park, Wade's Mill, &c. In a part of this river, better known by the local name of Litchford-brook, are many fine Trout, and much sport is experienced during the summer season: this water is near Puckeridge.

### THE STORT RIVER.

The river Stort runs from Bishop's Stortford, and is navigable to the Lea, into which it empties itself near Hoddesdon, passing by Sawbridgeworth, Harlow, and other places; this river is chiefly noted for Jack, Pike, and Perch, but contains Roach, Gudgeons, Dace, Eels, &c. As I was once roving for Perch on the banks of the Stort, I met a brother of the angle trolling on horseback: from the singularity of the case, I inquired into the cause of his being on horseback, suspecting that he had become indolent, but found it arose from weakness of a broken leg—by a little practice, he managed his tackle very well, and killed many good

---

fish without dismounting. The best part of this river for Jack, Pike, and Perch, (that I am acquainted with) is between Harlow and Sabridgeworth.

#### THE NEW RIVER\*

has many fish in all parts of it, from Islington to its source, near Ware in Hertfordshire: the fish are not so large as those caught in the Thames or Lea, but this river being perfectly free for all persons to angle in, (and very narrow near London,) it is particularly well calculated for the young angler to practise in: he may here take Chub, Roach, Dace, Perch, Gudgeons, Bleak, Eels, and Minnows, within a mile of the metropolis. In the preserved parts, about Southgate, Enfield-Park, Enfield, and Winchmore-Hill, the New River can boast of several good Carp, Jack, Roach, Chub, large Gudgeons, and Eels.

#### THE RIVER MOLE.

The sullen Mole, that hides his diving flood.

This river is so called from its running under ground in a part of its course, and is very famous for Pike, Jack, Perch, Chub, Carp, Roach, Dace, Gudgeons, and other fish. The Mole empties itself into the

\* This fine artificial stream is near forty miles in length, and has upwards of two hundred bridges, and forty-three sluices: over and under it many small brooks and water-courses have their passage between the basin at Chadwell and London.



Thames at East Moulsey in Surry, where the angler will find good sport, particularly in the neighbourhood of Esher, and on to Cobham, Dorking, and Reigate. In the course of this route there are many good deep, dark holes full of fish : in short, there is no river, of its size, containing more variety, or better fish, than the Mole.

#### THE RODING.

This little river contains many deep holes, and fine fish, particularly about Ongar, Ai-bridge, Loughton, Woodford-bridge, and all the way to Ilford and Barking: there are some good holes at the back of Wanstead, near the Red-bridge. This river produces Jack, Pike, Perch, Carp, Tench, Roach, Chub, and Eels, in abundance. Close on the right-hand side of Red-bridge is a famous deep hole, well stored with Jack, Perch, Chub, and Roach. Allowing for its breadth and depth of water, the frequency of its being robbed by poachers, &c. few waters are better stored, and there are many good fish taken out of it by angling. I have seldom met with larger Chub than in the Roding, or finer well-fed Jack and Pike: this river takes its rise at Cranfield, in Essex, and falls into the Thames, after passing through Barking-Creek.

#### THE RIVER WEY.

From Godalmin to Guildford, and on to Woking, and from thence to Byfleet, there is good fishing for

---

Jack, Pike, Bream, Tench, Chub, Perch, &c. and from Byfleet to the Thames at Weybridge, (where this river discharges itself,) are plenty of fish, and frequently good Carp are taken, as also fine Flounders and Tench.



## CHAP. XLV.

### PADDINGTON, CAMBERWELL, AND CROYDON CANALS.

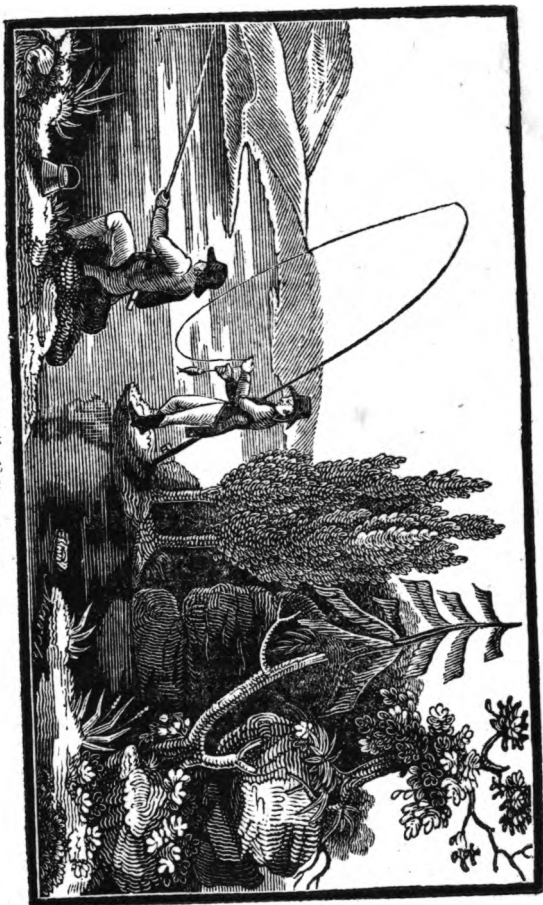
#### THE PADDINGTON CANAL

has several Roach, Chub, Perch, Gudgeons, Eels, and Jack; Roach are taken of a very good size, particularly about the wharfs, and close to the first bridge from Paddington, on the west side: you may take fish all the way to the Mitre-tavern, near Wormwood-scrubs, about three miles from Paddington, and from thence to the Grand Junction Canal, and on to Uxbridge. It is necessary the angler should be informed that the Roach in this canal will seldom take a gentle. I have never found gentles of so little use as in this water, where paste is the killing-bait for Roach, and red-worms for Perch, Gudgeons, &c.

#### THE CAMBERWELL CANAL

is stored with Jack, Pike, Perch, Roach, Eels, and some Carp and Tench, from Camberwell to Deptford; but the angler will find the best sport in trolling between the bridge or arch over the Kent Road, and that which goes over Deptford Lower Road, between these bridges the water is deep and broad: from the Deptford Road to the Thames at Rotherhithe, this canal will afford amusement to those who like angling for small Eels and Flounders.

BANK-FISHING.





---

---

**THE CROYDON CANAL,**

which passes under the Kent Road, near New Cross, winding through corn-fields and woods to Sydenham-common, is navigable from Deptford (passing Sydenham) to Croydon: in this canal are many good fish, and much retired and pleasant angling: (the views and general rural scenery are rarely to be excelled) it contains fine Perch, Roach, Gudgeons, Eels, &c. and was free for any one to angle in, all the way to Croydon, in the year 1812, which was the last time I angled in it. The Camberwell and Croydon canals are both supplied with water from the Thames at Rotherhithe.

**AT SYDENHAM**

are some pieces of water well-stored with fine Carp, which are free to the angler on his paying an annual subscription: Sydenham is a very pretty village, in a retired situation on the south-side of Norwood, about eight miles from the capital.



## CHAP. XLVI.

### WATERS AND PONDS NEAR LONDON.

#### WELLINGTON-WATER

is a large piece of water, situated between Bethnal-green Road and the Hackney Road, and is well-stocked with fish, kept for the angler's diversion, at half a guinea per annum subscription.

#### CLAPHAM COMMON, &c.

There are some ponds on Clapham and Wandsworth commons, and at Hampstead-heath, which are free for any person to angle in: here may be taken Perch, Crucian Carp, and some others. Fishing in these ponds will tend to the practice and improvement of the young angler, who wishes to acquire skill in the pleasant and delightful art of angling.

#### HORNSEY-WOOD.

In the gardens of Hornsey-wood tea-house and tavern the angler may meet with tolerable sport: this pond is well stocked with Carp, Tench, Perch, Roach, &c. Any person taking refreshment at the house will be allowed to angle in this water by asking permission at the bar. Chewed bread is the best ground-bait here, and in most still waters where you angle for Carp, Tench, and Roach.

## AT GODSTONE, OR GODSTONE-GREEN,

a village in Surrey, nineteen miles from London, are some waters containing numerous large Carp, in which you are suffered to angle by paying thirteen-pence per pound for what you catch and take away. I knew an angler from London, who took in one day as many Carp as came to three pounds twelve shillings: he was then, though reluctantly, obliged to desist, fearing his purse would barely pay his expenses to town. These Carp run from three to five pounds each. The White Hart is the best House of accommodation in Godstone.

## DAGENHAM BREACH.

Near the village of Dagenham, in Essex, is a fine piece of water, more than seven miles in circumference, and in many parts of great depth, called Dagenham-Breach, made by the overflowing of the river Thames, from an exceeding high tide, and an easterly wind, in the year 1703, which broke down the banks, and laid some thousands of acres under water; the whole was drained off excepting this piece of water, by a Capt. John Perry, in the year 1714, after two years' labour, for the sum of twenty-five thousand pounds, which was voted by parliament for that purpose. This water is well stored with Jack, very large Pike, Eels, Perch, Roach, &c. and likewise with Bream, which are more



numerous here than in any piece of water I am acquainted with. No still water can compare with Dagenham-Breach, (at least near London) for variety and numbers of fine fish. This water is preserved for the amusement of angling, at two guineas per annum subscription.

#### CHISLEHURST.

On Chislehurst-common in Kent, between eleven and twelve miles from London, are several ponds stored with Carp, Perch, &c. particularly the pond adjoining to the Queen's Head inn gardens, which is, or was, but a few years since, full of Carp and Perch: in this pond I have often caught with a red worm, ground-baiting with chewed bread, four or five dozen of Carp and Perch during an afternoon's angling, weighing from a quarter of a pound to a pound and a half each.

#### AT STANMORE, IN MIDDLESEX.

ten miles from London, at the upper end of the village on the common, near the Vine public house, are two or three ponds stored with Perch, Tench, &c, particularly the one known by the name of the Spring Pond, so called from being chiefly supplied by a neighbouring spring of exceeding fine water: this pond is of a considerable size, free from weeds, and generally of a clear gravelly bottom, famous for breeding Perch, which are

very numerous, and thrive amazingly fast ; there are also some fine Carp, Eels, &c. The north side is the most shallow, and among the grass and weeds which grow in the early part of the summer, the Carp are frequently found : from the opposite banks over the rushes, and about the flood-gate, you will have the best sport in angling for Perch. Between this pond and the Marquis of Abercorn's seat, the Priory, (about a mile distant) is a large piece of water called the Long Pond, which belongs to Mr. Clutterbuck, the brewer : in this pond or canal are caught some fine Jack and Pike.

#### ALDENHAM.

On Aldenham Common, about a mile north of Stanmore, and near the little village of Elstree, the angler will find a large deep piece of water, into which Aldenham-brook empties itself, and which extends across the common a considerable distance. It was intended to supply some streams or canals in the neighbourhood, and from its depth the fish are in a great measure preserved from poachers : it is very well stocked with Perch, Carp, Dace, Gudgeons, and Eels. This brook abounds with that little singular fish called the Loach, or Stone Loach.

#### EPPING FOREST.

Just on the entrance of Epping forest, by the Green Man, the angler will find a pond abounding with large

**Carp and Eels.** Near this spot there are several other ponds in which are Carp, Tench, Eels, Roach, and Crucian Carp; likewise in the pond close to the George, at Wanstead, and in a large piece of water near the Golden Eagle, at Snaresbrook: this is a subscription-water, stocked with Jack, Pike, Carp, Eels, &c. These waters are all within a mile of each other.

Our plenteous streams a various race supply—  
The bright-eyed Perch, with fins of Tyrian dye;  
The silver Eel, in shining volumes roll'd;  
The yellow Carp, in scales bedropp'd with gold;  
Swift Trout, diversified with crimson stains;  
And Pikes, the tyrants of the watery plains.

POPE'S Windsor Forest.

#### OBSERVATIONS ON POND FISHING.

Angling for fish in ponds is more fit for the inexperienced or novice in angling, than in rivers or swift streams, for generally speaking, fish in ponds and still waters, are not so large, strong, active or well-fed, as fish are in rivers; they are, therefore, more easily allured and taken by a baited hook, neither is it of such material consequence to provide such fine or superior tackle, to plumb the depth so accurately, or to throw so much of choice ground bait in; for fish in ponds and confined waters, have not such a variety or quantity of food, as is produced or found in rivers and streams; indeed some ponds are so over-

---

stocked with fish, that those which are taken are generally very thin, ill-shaped and coloured, and half-starved, particularly if there has been a long drought, the springs are then very low, and the water in ponds the same: at such times fish will take almost any bait that is offered. From those causes it is apparent, that ponds or still water-fishing is best calculated for those who have had little or no practice in the art of angling, as less skill, application, or labour is required, than in rivers.—Note, fish do not feed so much on the ground in ponds as in rivers.

## CHAP. XLVII.

HINTS TO ANGLERS HOW TO CHUSE GUT AND HAIR,  
AND TO COLOUR THE SAME,\* WITH BRIEF REMARKS  
ON ANGLING IN EVERY MONTH OF THE YEAR.

DURING the winter quarter the angler must not expect many days, or even hours, when he can indulge in his favourite amusement; for the pinching frost which binds up every water in icy chains, is scarcely less favourable than the boisterous winds and heavy rains, which cause the rivers to overflow and inundate the low lands around them, and not only disturb and discolour the waters, but even render them, in many cases, inaccessible. This therefore, is the proper time for the angler to examine his tackle, and repair whatever is amiss; to see whether his stock of the various articles requisite is complete, and if not, to add to it whatever is wanting. The rods should be now examined, and repaired if any repairs are wanting, and above all, new varnishing should be done at this season; and, by the way, let me advise my angling friends to be particular

\* In chusing gut prefer that which is smooth, round, transparent, and free from yellowish spots; the same way chuse hair; to try the strength of gut the best way is to bite it, if it feels hard or wiry it is strong. To dye or stain gut, hair or silk of a grey blue colour, mix half black ink and boiling water together, in which steep the gut or hair for an hour or more; this colour and sorrel or brown I consider the best possible colours for the angler's use, therefore shall not notice any others. To colour sorrel or brown see page 3.

in scraping off the old varnish before they put on new, or if they even send their rods from home to be re-varnished, let them take the trouble to scrape off the old themselves. Nothing should be omitted on the part of the angler to make his apparatus as complete as possible, that he may not be employed in making or repairing tackle, at a season when his time might be better employed in using it. Gay has given the fisherman some wholesome advice on this subject in the following beautiful lines, in the first canto of his Rural Sports:

When genial Spring a living warmth bestows,  
And o'er the year her verdant mantle throws,  
No swelling inundation hides the grounds,  
But chrystal currents glide within their bounds :  
The finny brood their wonted haunts forsake,  
Float in the sun, and skim along the lake ;  
With frequent leap they range the shallow streams,  
Their silver coats reflect the dazzling beams.  
Now let the fisherman his toils prepare,  
And arm himself with every watery snare ;  
His hooks, his lines, peruse with careful eye,  
Increase his tackle, and his rod re-tie.

My advice, however, is to prepare every thing needful while—

The swelling inundation hides the ground,

and not have it to do—

When genial Spring a living warmth bestows,

Thus the angler may employ some of his leisure time for future pleasure, but it is well to recollect that Solomon says, "the wise man looks to the end," for anglers as well as other sportsmen, are unable to follow their favourite amusements when infirmities and old age arrives ; it would therefore, be wise to cultivate the mind to get a taste for literature, as a resource in solitude infirmities, or when age prevents the sportsman from using his angle rod or gun. A taste for reading may prevent the aged or infirm sportsman from becoming querulous, captious, or probably from too frequently applying to the bottle for solace, a failing (perhaps with some truth,) frequently charged to the character of sportsmen.

#### JANUARY.

The only fish that will take a bait this month are Jack, Pike, Chub and Roach, for which you may angle an hour or two in the middle of the day provided the water is sufficiently clear.

#### FEBRUARY.

In the latter end of February, if the weather is mild for the season, Carp, Perch, Roach, and Chub, as well as Jack and Pike will feed : they all prefer live baits at this season. Fish only in the middle of the day, and in eddies near the banks, for fish always get to the scowers and shallows, and near the banks after winter, and remain there till after they have spawned.

---

---

**MARCH.**

During this month Jack, Pike, Carp, Perch, Roach, Dace, Chub, Gudgeon, and Minnows will take a bait : still continue to use a live bait generally, and prefer the middle of the day. Angle in the shallows and eddies near the banks. Jack, Pike, Smelts, Flounders, Bleak, and Perch spawn in this month.

**APRIL.**

All the fish enumerated in March, with the addition of Trout, will feed this month, and sometimes Tench, (in rivers) also Barbel, Bleak, Flounders and Eels—baits as before. Angle in shallows, sharps, &c. as in March. Barbel, Dace, Gudgeons, Minnows, Rudd, Bream, and Pope or Ruff spawn this month.

**MAY.**

During this month Eels will run and take a bait night and day, and all the different species of fresh-water fish now feed and take baits, at top and bottom of the water ; also in ponds, you may expect sport. Still prefer to angle in the shallows, sharps, streams and eddies. Roach, Chub, Carp, Millers Thumb, and Umber or Grayling spawn this month.

**JUNE.**

This month the angler will find but indifferent sport, most fish having recently spawned, and are out of con-



dition, except Trout, which are now healthy and strong. Angle in the streams, eddies, and currents. Tench spawn this month.

#### JULY.

All fresh-water fish will now feed, but best in the morning and evening, and will take a variety of baits ; but although from the quantity of food they get from weeds, and not having quite recovered from spawning, they will not take a bait freely. Still continue to angle in the streams and scowers. Gudgeons spawn again this month.

#### AUGUST.

All kinds of fish will take a bait more freely than last month, but best very early, and late in the evening: prefer the stream during this month for angling. Carp and Smelts spawn again this month.

#### SEPTEMBER.

This month is a good season for most kinds of angling, from early in the morning till late at night. Barbel, Chub, Roach and Dace, are now leaving the weeds, and get into deep water.

#### OCTOBER.

This month is good for trolling and bottom fishing for Roach and Chub, but not for fly-fishing, or angling in

---

ponds or still waters. The weeds are now sour and rotten, and the fish are all in holes and deep water.

## NOVEMBER.

Chub, Roach, Jack and Pike, will still feed, and sometimes freely in the middle of the day.

## DECEMBER.

Chub, Roach, Jack and Pike continue to afford the angler amusement and profit, if a favourable opportunity offers to exercise his skill, which seldom occurs this month, as the waters are generally too thick, or frozen up. Barbel, Carp, and Gudgeons are now retired to their winter quarters; the Eels are also buried in numbers together, deep in holes or mud.

The fields their verdure now resign,  
The bleating flocks and lowing kine,  
Give o'er their former play;  
The feather'd tribe forget the notes,  
Which joyful strain'd their vocal throats  
To chaunt the matin lay.

**CHAP. XLIII.**

Hope and Patience support the fisherman.

Good nature sets our hearts at ease,  
—— and softens pain and sorrow.

**RULES AND OBSERVATIONS RELATIVE TO  
ANGLING.**

To prevent disputes, it is generally understood and agreed to among anglers, that a distance the length of rod and line, or thirty feet, shall be kept between each person while angling.

When you have made choice of a place to fish, first plumb the depth truly, and with as little disturbance to the water as may be ; let your line with the plummet to it remain in the water while you make and cast in the ground bait, by which time the line will be softened and stretched, consequently less likely to break. If the water is still, throw in small pieces of ground bait, and keep as far from the water as you can ; if your dress is dark I think it better, an old angler I was acquainted with, used to wear a green hat, coat, waistcoat, small-cloaths and stockings, that the fish might mistake him for a bush.

When you have hook'd a heavy fish, use your utmost skill, for it is much easier to strike or hook than to kill or land a fish ; when you feel you have hold

---

of a large fish, immediately give him line, and by no means check him unless there is some great impediment in your way that would almost to a certainty break or so entangle your line as to leave no chance of your killing the fish, in that case chuse the least evil, by trying the strength of your tackle in bringing him to the landing net or shore ; when the fish stops wind up some of the line, and lead him to the part of the water that is free from the current, weeds, &c. keep the top of your rod elevated, and draw the fish to the right, the left, and so on till he is quite tired or spent, but while so playing the fish, when it struggles or pulls hard give line freely, wind it again, and so continue to act until the fish is so exhausted as to suffer itself to be drawn without resistance, then you may venture to bring it to the landing net ; here again they generally make a violent plunge on first seeing the net, if so give line again and play him a little longer, and again bring him to the net ; this course must be pursued until the fish suffers itself to be quietly netted, if you are without a landing net or hook, you must take the fish to a shallow inlet or level shore ; more fish are lost after being fairly hook'd, for want of skill or patience in the angler, than by any other means, for if a very heavy fish is hook'd with a small hook and fine tackle, by giving line when he pulls strong instead of pulling against him, the largest fish may be kill'd with such fine tackle as would break with a fish of a pound weight, if attempted to be weighed or lifted out immediately it is hook'd.

After a day's fishing make it a rule to examine your tackle, particularly the lines and hooks, as some part of the line may probably be chafed and weakened, by rubbing against strong weeds, the shelves under the banks, or other causes: take out any defective part and replace it by a new length; also see that the hooks you have used are still sharp, and tight enough tied to use again; if not, re-tie them, and occasionally rub your lines with a little sweet oil, mutton-suet or wax candle, to keep them from suddenly snapping, which they are apt to do when too dry.

Accustom yourself to use fine tackle, which will the sooner make you a skilful angler by greater care being requisite in using it: if you perchance break your tackle, do not loose your temper, but sit down and diligently repair the damage done,\* then begin again, recollecting that "Hope and Patience support the fisherman."

\* If you have the misfortune to break a joint of your rod follow this method to mend it; cut the broken ends with a slope so that they may fit closely together, spread a little shoe-maker's wax smoothly on each slope, lay them together very even, then bind them together with well waxed thread or small twine such as shoe-makers use, called wax ends. To fasten off without tying a knot, lay the fore finger of your left hand over the binding, and with your right make four turns with the waxed thread over it, then pass the end of your thread between the under side of your finger and the rod, and draw away your finger, then with your right hand, finger and thumb take hold of the second of the turns, draw it tight, the same with the others, then take the end and draw it very close, and cut off

When you tie a knot, in making or repairing a line, always soak the gut or hair in warm water ; if that cannot be obtained, hold it in your mouth until soft, otherwise in tying the gut or hair while dry, it will surely break. Make yourself acquainted with every method of tying knots, fastening off, &c. by enquiring among experienced anglers, the proprietors of fishing tackle shops, watermen, sailors, and whip makers.

When soft rain falls, or the day turns out foggy, gloomy and close, most kinds of fish will feed at bottom : you may expect sport also by dipping towards dusk, but a gentle curling breeze is best for whipping.

If hail falls or the day proves very cold, and a strong wind blowing, the angler must not expect much sport : neither will the fish take a bait late in the day in winter ; therefore only angle a few hours at mid-day, and exactly reverse the rule in summer. When clouds

the spare part. When at home mending a rod, it is adviseable to rub over the part mended a coat of warm wax. Note, always carry some wax, silk, and thread in your tackle book, for the most careful may break a rod or line. When fastening off after mending a broken rod, I prefer placing a bone disgorgers over the binding or whipping to that of my finger, because it does not require the turns to be so large, and they are more readily drawn tight when the disgorgers is removed, and by passing the waxed thread through the hole at the top of the disgorgers and bringing it under the loops or turns, the whole is soon made tight and fast. Some glue the fractured parts of the rod together before they whip it ; if the glue is melted or simmer'd in water that has been pour'd on quick lime, it will cement the broken part together much firmer.

gather and bring on a storm, fish will leave off biting oftentimes some hours before the storm bursts. Thunder, lightning and hail, is offensive to fish, and also spoils the anglers sport.

If ask'd, " What wind suits angling best ?

I answer, " The south, or south-west."

It generally happens in the months of July and August, that the water in the rivers, &c. is very low, and loaded both on the surface and bottom with slimy weeds, in consequence of which the watery element becomes unhealthy ; the angler must not expect the fish to bite freely until a storm or heavy rains agitate and purify the waters : immediately after which, there will be good sport in fishing for Barbel, Roach, Chub, and most kinds of fish.

The angler should not be discouraged or lose his taste for fishing, because he does not always meet with success, for if he could take many fish every time he used his angle, he would find the pleasure of angling considerably diminished. A good day's sport occasionally, keeps desire alive—too much ceases to excite.

For your health's sake never drink water out of rivers and ponds while in a perspiration : also be careful to keep your feet dry by wearing strong boots or shoes, which should be frequently well saturated with the following mixture : take half a pound of chopped

---

mutton suet, and six ounces of bees-wax cut into pieces, to which add about an ounce of powdered rosin, simmer the whole in a pipkin till it is well mixed: when you wish to use it, render it liquid by melting, and rub it well into the leather with a brush. This mixture will make leather water-proof, and answers better than oily mixtures; the bees-wax, &c. soon sets and hardens, thereby filling up the pores of the leather.

When you use the landing-net, avoid touching the line with it, or you hazard breaking it and losing your fish.

Many good fish are lost after they have been fairly hooked, by the hook breaking or straightening; therefore make it a rule to try the strength of your hooks before you use them, in the following manner:—hold the hook by the shank, and place the other end over a nail or staple that may be driven in a board, wall, or any other place, then pull strong with jirking, if the hook breaks there is an end of the tryal, if it bends a little and again recovers its shape, it may be used, but if it bends or nearly draws straight, it should be rejected, for you are as likely to lose a fish by the hook straightening as by its breaking, a real well tempered hook will neither bend nor break. Small hooks may be tried by holding one between the fore-finger and thumb of each hand by their shanks, and hooking the bended parts together, then pulling and jirking one against the other.



Whene'er dear brothers, you shall go to fish,  
I wish you luck to take a handsome dish  
Of Carp, Tench, Pike, Perch, Barbel, Dace or Roach,  
By angling fair—I pray you never poach ;  
But first, good sirs, a useful lesson take,  
From an old brother *Bob*, an angling rake :  
Before you quit your homes, look round, and think  
If all your *traps* are right, with cash for meat and drink,  
Worms, gentles, paste and greaves you must provide,  
Good lines, floats, plummets, and spare hooks beside,  
And when your sport is done, bear this in mind—  
Look well about, that naught is left behind.

From June till November fish feed or bite best in the mornings and evenings ; from November to May the middle of the day is best, unless the weather is remarkably warm or muggy, in that case you will meet with sport from day-light till dark : and again, during the summer, if the weather is dark and cloudy, or warm drizzling rain falls, you may expect sport in the middle of the day, and till it is quite dark.

When you see Trout, Chub, or Salmon leap out of the water at flies, moths, &c. and Jack, Pike, and Perch shoot after the small fish, steadily pursue your amusement of angling, for the fish are then on the feed.

In June the rivers and other waters generally begin to get low and bright, and so continue during the summer ; the angler should then use finer tackle when fishing, than what he has done during the spring

---

months: when the waters are high and somewhat thick, instead of a stout gut line and No. 8 or 9 hook (when angling for Chub or Barbel) use a fine gut line, and a stout small No. 10 hook.

In fly-fishing you will meet with the best sport after a shower of rain that does not thicken the water, but it has little effect in bottom-fishing, unless enough falls to colour the water: the fish then come near the sides or banks, expecting food to be washed from the land, consequently you may reasonably expect sport, fish being then on the feed.

When fishing fine for Carp, Roach, &c. it is necessary that you shoot your line with small shot, they being less likely to alarm the fish by their bulk, and also make less resistance to the water when you strike, than shot of a large size, consequently you are more likely to hit a fish.

When the water is very low and bright in rivers, angle far out, and in the stream; but when the rivers are full and thick, fish in the eddies and near the bank.

When cold winds blow, always angle in the deep holes that lie under the wind, or you will meet with little sport, for fish are very susceptible of cold. When you fish in shallow water, and the sun is shining, endeavour to place yourself so that your shadow does not lie upon the water, or you will meet little success.

R

When you have occasion to speak to any person while angling, make it a rule, while so speaking, to keep some distance from the water, that yourself or shadow be not seen by the fish: also avoid asking unnecessary questions, for though the party to whom they may be addressed, out of politeness may return civil answers, yet if he is an experienced angler, and has his sport at heart, you cannot oblige him more than making your questions and stay as short as possible. A forced conversation, and loitering about any person while fishing, is considered extremely rude among anglers.

Never attempt to lift a large fish out of the water by taking hold of any part of your line, for with the least plunge the fish will surely break away, but use a land-ing net for the purpose. While fly-fishing, you cannot avoid sometimes laying hold of your line to draw the fish near the shore, but do it with much care and caution.

Some baits are peculiar to certain rivers and waters, also the same baits are taken earlier in some rivers than in others, and later one year than the other by a few weeks, according to the forwardness of the season, of those things the angler should take notice, which will prevent much disappointment, loss of time, &c.

Careful anglers provide themselves with a piece of cork or board (which some cover with a piece of carpet,) to sit on while angling, knowing the danger of

---

sitting on the bare ground, however dry it may seem, from so doing many have experienced violent colics, inflammations in the bowels, &c. The cork or board provided for a seat, is usually about eighteen inches long, and twelve broad, which may be kept and carried in a basket or pannier with other articles used by anglers.

When angling in rapid heavy water it is necessary to have a float on the line, that will require many shot to sink it, cork floats are generally preferred in this case, the best are those which have the cork fixed on a very strong quill of a Goose, Swan, or Porcupine, about the middle thereof; this piece of cork should be of a long oval shape, about an inch long, and the same in circumference in the middle; this shape is far preferable to the old shaped cork floats, made in the form of a Windsor pair, which make a great resistance in passing through the water, consequently a slight bite is not so easily seen or struck. If a tip cap'd float is used in such water it must be very strong made, and the top thicker and stouter than the bottom, or it will not swim steady though in moderate streams or still water, always prefer the tip cap'd float, with both ends equally small, for no other shape shews a slight bite so readily. Note, pass the line two or three times around the float before you put the top cap on, which prevents the line slipping when you strike or losing the proper depth, &c.

When you fish for Barbel in deep or rapid streams, let your baited hook drag on the ground several inches, to effect which, make it a rule when you have taken the depth to let the hook touch the ground, and the bottom of the float the surface of the water ; by so doing when you are angling, and the float being sunk to its proper depth in the water, the baited hook will lay on the ground and slowly drift with the current, which gives time and facility to the fish to take the bait. Note, while angling for Barbel, especially in such streams as above described, throw in six or more balls of ground bait about the size of duck eggs every quarter of an hour ; again I repeat that while angling for Barbel, Chub, Bream, Carp, Roach, and Dace, you cannot hardly cast in too much ground bait.

After a days fishing with a gut line, (especially if for Barbel in heavy and rapid streams,) always well rub the line with shoe-makers wax before you use it again, which strengthens, smooths, and nourishes the gut, and also gives it a brown tinge. This colour is without question, the best for bottom fishing, by following this method, the angler has no occasion to trouble himself with dying his gut.

When your rod has been in the rain, (or from any other cause got wet) the joints are apt to swell, so that you cannot separate them. Application must be then made to heat ; hold the joint of the rod over the flame

---

of a lighted candle, the wet will soon begin to ooze out from between the joints, and they are then easily parted.

When angling for Carp, Chub, Roach, or Perch, and after having hooked a fish, he breaks away, little sport is to be expected in the place where you lost him, (especially if a large one, and you have played him some time,) for when free from the hook, with fright and pain they rush violently away, which alarms the others: in such case, immediately cast in a good store of ground-bait, or move to another place.—Note, when casting in ground-bait (especially for Carp and Chub) throw in small pieces, and as gently as possible, for those fish are soon alarmed, and when so, seldom take a bait again that day.

When angling in a water that you have no local knowledge of, fish in the eddies, or at the meeting of two streams, around piles about bridges, locks, mill-tales, pools, wiers, deep dark holes, and flood-gates.

When angling in a river, or any other water, for Barbel, Chub, Roach, Dace, Gudgeons, or Perch, prefer that part which has a clean, gravelly or sandy bottom; for those fish, unlike Carp, Tench and Eels, are seldom found where the bottom is foul or muddy.

For the purpose of relieving a fish from the pain of a lingering death, (which humanity dictates,) the angler

should, immediately after he has taken a fish strike it with force on the head, and it instantly ceases to exist ; many anglers carry with their tackle a stout heavy piece of wood, about a foot long, for the purpose ; if in want of this a large stone or the butt-end of the rod will do.



The above plate shews the way a Jack first takes a small fish, he then retires to his usual haunt, and after sucking it a few minutes swallows it head foremost, which among anglers is termed pouching or gorging,



---



---

 LIST OF HOOKS.
 

---

The following list of hooks to be used in the Rivers Thames and Lea, will prevent the trouble of referring to the different chapters :


- For Barbel fishing in the Thames, .. No. 6, 7, and 8 Hook.
- For Barbel fishing in the Lea,..... No. 8 and 9 Hook.
- For Gudgeon fishing in the Thames, No. 10 and 11 Hook.
- For Gudgeon fishing in the Lea, ... No. 11 and 12 Hook.
- For Perch fishing, ..... No. 7 and 8 Hook.
- For Carp fishing, ..... No. 9 and 10 Hook.
- For Roach, Dace, and Bleak, ..... No. 11, 12, 13 Hook.

The above sizes are such as the best anglers of the present day always prefer, and are much smaller than those which were commonly used thirty years since. At that time, larger hooks and stronger tackle might have been used with success ; but, unfortunately for the lovers of angling, the stock of fish in most rivers has been gradually on the decline ; in the Dove, so highly spoken of by the father of anglers, Isaac Walton, there is a sad falling off of Trout and Grayling ; from the number being smaller, they are consequently better supplied with food, and are therefore more cautious of risking their lives when strong tackle and large hooks are offered. The angler who expects success, therefore, must adopt the modern tackle, or he will not fail to be disappointed. It is true a few Roach, Dace, Gudgeons, &c. may be taken with a twisted hair-line, cork float, and No. 8 or 9 hook ; but to have a reasonable chance for good sport, the old heavy tackle must be exploded, and in its place the fine light rod, fine line and float, and as small a hook as the nature of the water will allow of must be adopted, and what is wanting in strength of tackle the angler must supply in skill.



## ***ADDENDA,***

**CONTAINING DIRECTIONS FOR BAITING HOOKS—  
CHAIN AND NIGHT-LINES\* FOR EELS DESCRIBED,  
WITH COMPOSITION FOR PRESERVING THE SAME,  
TROLLING LINES, &c.—METHOD OF PLUMBING THE  
DEPTH, AND PARTICULARS RESPECTING ORNAMENTAL  
FISH-PONDS.**



### **DIRECTIONS HOW TO BAIT HOOKS WITH WORMS.**

To bait a hook with a worm, use the following method: enter the point of the hook into the worm a little below the head, and carry it down within a quarter of an inch of its tail, which part, by moving about, intices the fish: keep the shank of the hook as much covered with the body of the worm as possible. If you bait with two worms on a hook, draw the first up above the shank while you put the second on (in the same manner as

\* When speaking of twisted gut and hair lines in page 9, I omitted informing those who may choose to twist gut or hair, that machines for that purpose are sold at the Fishing Tackle Shops. The sellers of those engines can explain the method of twisting gut, &c. In a few words, much better than half a dozen pages written on the subject. When hair is used, take pieces of the same lengths (suppose four) near as you can, and put half the thick ends thereof to equal numbers of the thin ends of the other lengths, the whole will be then of the same strength.

---

directed with one worm) then draw the first one down on the second, the shank, hook and all will be then well covered, and the whole will be a very enticing bait for Perch, Carp, Barbel, and all large fish. When fishing for small fish and gudgeons half a red worm is better than a whole one; use the tail part in preference, enter the point of your hook at the thick end thereof and carry it near to the end of its tail.

#### WITH GENTLES.

To bait a hook with a gentle, use this method: enter the point of the hook into the gentle near either end, and bring it out at the other end, then draw the point back again just within the gentle, enough to hide it: this is the best way to bait with a gentle whose skin is something tough, especially in cold weather. By piercing the skin in the first instance, when striking fine your hook will enter sufficiently into the fish and secure it, and you do not risk breaking your line, or the top of the rod, which frequently happens by striking too hard.

#### WITH GREAVES.

To bait a hook with greaves is as follows: first, select the whitest pieces from what you have soaked, and put four or five pieces on your hook, or as much as will cover it from the bend to and over the point: these

pieces should be about half the size of a sixpence, and put on the hook separately, or one after the other, not a large piece doubled, as some indolent anglers do, for then the hook is prevented entering firmly the fish you strike; whereas, by putting the pieces on separately, when you strike they either break off, or are pushed up the shank, and the whole bend of the hook enters the fish, and you have firm hold. These minutiae of baiting, &c. are of singular advantage, which the observing angler will not fail to attend to, and appreciate, being worthy his notice.—Note, it is a bad practice to boil greaves, for it makes them rotten and fall off the hook; just cover the quantity you intend to soak with hot water. After picking the best white pieces for baits, pour the liquor with the remaining among brand to mix with clay for ground baiting, for Barbel and Chub nothing is better.

---

#### CHAIN AND NIGHT-LINES FOR EELS.

Large Eels very seldom feed but in the night, consequently the angler is necessitated to lay night-lines, or forego the pleasure and advantage of supplying his table with fine Eels, (except he takes one occasionally by sniggling) The method of taking Eels by night-lines is as follows: take ten yards or more of strong whip or lay-cord, tie one end of it to a stick or peg

---

which you fix in the ground, and fasten your hook to the other, which should be whipped or tied on to about ten inches of strong plaited silk, gimp, or twine double waxed with wax candle about a foot above the hook; put a bullet or leger lead to keep the bait in its place; some use twisted wire, which is improper, for an Eel will generally, by twisting, break away from wire.—Note, always lay your lines free from a muddy bottom, for the Eels lay in mud to avoid cold, &c. but come to clean bottoms to feed, and again by laying your line among mud, the bullet or lead will sink the bait entirely therein, consequently you then have little chance of taking an Eel.

Hooks proper for this method of taking Eels are made on purpose, both double and single, and are called Eel-hooks; in choosing which, pass those that are very broad in the bend, and the points stand too much outward, or as anglers term it, *rank*.

If you use worms for a bait, they should be large well scoured lob-worms, using the single hook: to bait which, take a minnow baiting-needle, and fasten it to the silk or gimp to which the hook is tied; enter the point of the needle near the tail of the worm, and bring it out at its head, drawing the worm over the shank of the hook, taking care also to cover the barb and point of the hook. Some bait their hooks by entering the point of the needle at the head of the worm, and carry-

ing it down to within a quarter of an inch of the tail, which hangs free, and the body of the worm is drawn over the shank and whipping of the hook, but this way wounds the worm more than the method first described. Note, hooks baited with worms are more frequently disturbed by small Eels, than when baited with small fish or lampreys.

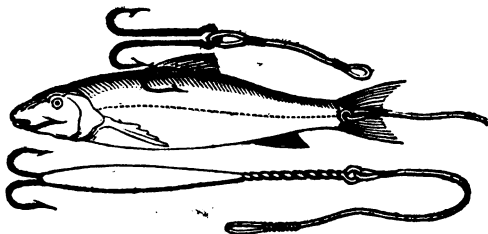
When a double hook is used, a small Gudgeon, (about five inches long,) Roach, Dace, Bleak, Miller's Thumb, Stone Loach, or about two inches of a Lamprey, are all proper baits; but Gudgeons are to be preferred. The Lamprey cut in pieces, not more than two inches of which should be put on the hook, is known by many experienced anglers as a killing bait for Eels; but it will not answer in every river, or parts of the same river, nor in ponds or still waters: it does very well in the river Lea, within ten miles of London. When you make use of this bait, let the hooks lie close to the bait at one end, in the same manner as described for baiting with the gorge-hook, the silk or whatever else the hook is tied to, coming out at the other end of the bait. It should be observed, that the part of the Lamprey which contains the roe is the most enticing.

When you bait with a Gudgeon, or other small fish, let the hooks lie close in the bait's mouth; and that which they are tied to coming out at the tail, exactly the same as described to bait a gorge-hook for trolling,

which see. These lines should be laid in those parts of rivers or waters where they are not likely to be buried in the mud or entangled with heavy or strong weeds, and if they were all fastened to bank-runners, the angler would find less loss of lines or hooks than when tied to a stick, as they never get twisted, or check the Eels, but give way, and yield to every motion ; whereas by laying the lines in coils on the bank, or in the water, they frequently get twisted, and check a bite.—Note, though Eels lay in holes, or buried in mud, in a torpid state, yet they always come to clean sandy or gravelly scouers to feed, about large chalk stones and lumps are good places to lay a line.

The chain-line is so named from having a number of hooks baited, and tied to it, in the following manner: first, take a stout thick line, (some use a clothes line) and fasten one end of it to a brick, or any heavy substance ; to this line fasten as many baited hooks as you think proper, about two feet apart, the hooks being tied to smaller lines about one yard long ; then throw the brick, or what the rope is tied to, in the water, and fasten the other end to another brick, or a staff or tree, and the baited hooks will then all hang free, and be separated from each other. Experience, however, has taught me to prefer laying single lines, and I will venture to assert, that those who lay six single lines shall kill more Eels or other fish than with a chain-line that shall have twenty baited hooks on it.—Note, Eels will take a bait at night from March till November.

To take up these lines, it is proper the angler should have a drag with him, fastened to plenty of strong cord, which drag being thrown over the lines in the water, easily brings them to hand. These lines should always be dried gradually and carefully after they have been used, before they are put away, or they will soon become rotten ; it is a good plan to rub them well with a piece of wax-candle occasionally. Half-grown live frogs are good bait for Eels on night lines, in ponds and still waters, during May and June.



The lovers of trolling\* and trimmer angling, may always procure live fish for baits of Isaac Jacobs, fish-

\* Since that part of the Angler's Guide which treats of trolling for Jack, &c. was sent to the press, I have used a dead snap with four hooks with much success, and do not hesitate recommending it before every other kind, (the representations of these snap hooks above;) to bait this snap, first introduce the gorge hook into the bait's mouth, the leaded part laying in its belly exactly as when you intend trolling with the gorge hook, (see gorge hook baited :) then take a double hook, No. 5 or 6, which must be tied to a piece

monger, No. 30, Duke Street, Aldgate. Baits may be met with occasionally at other shops, but no other place can be depended upon in London; particularly for Gudgeons, during winter and summer.

COMPOSITION FOR PRESERVING TROLLING LINES,  
TRIMMER LINES, &c.

Take one table spoonful of linseed or nut oil, of beeswax and rosin, a piece of each, the size of a small wal-  
of gimp about three inches long with a loop at the end; now take your baiting needle and enter the point of it in the bait's back just where the back fin is, (but note it is the best way to cut off the said fin and every other fin, and the tail of bait fish which you intend to troll with) and bring it out at the tail, having first put the loop of the gimp to which the hooks are tied through the curve or eye of the baiting needle, draw the loop out at the tail of the bait, the hooks will then lay close over the bait's back one on each side, to effect which the hooks should be bent so as to lay on like a saddle. After you have placed the hooks properly, take the loop end of the gimp to which the gorge hook is tied, and pass it through the loop of the gimp to which the other hooks are tied, draw all close to the bait's tail, and tie them fast with white thread, and all is now complete to fasten on to your line. The superiority of this method of using a snap consists in all the hooks laying close to the bait, and also in the gimp and line coming from the tail instead of from the mouth or back, which is very material, for hooks so placed will allow the bait to appear more like a live fish swimming or spinning about in the water, than if it is hooked by the back fin or side, in which case much of the hooks are exposed, the gimp sticks up, &c. And again, if all the hooks are placed on one side of the bait, its motion when in the water is unnatural or not like a live fish; this snap which I have been describing and recommending, may be trolled with as well as using it for a dip bait; strike smartly immediately you feel a bite, and if your tackle is good fear not killing either Jack or Pike. Some anglers object to using snap hooks, because the fish be-



---

nut, bruise the rosin, cut the wax in small pieces, and then put oil, wax and rosin, into a small pipkin, and let it simmer over the fire till the whole is in a liquid state, then dip your trolling line into the hot mixture, and let it remain a minute, then take it out, and hang it up to dry, which it will take two or more days to do: when quite dry, it will be water proof, stronger, and last much longer than when drest with any thing else I am acquainted with. Next in value I consider wax candle well rubbed on and into lines.

---

#### PLUMBING THE DEPTH.

Plumbing the depth is done in the following manner; if a ring plummet, pass the hook through the ring, and fix the point into the cork at the bottom; if a folding plummet, unfold about two inches of it, pass the hook over its side, (as represented in the cut of a folding plummet, in plate No. 3,) and then fold the plummet up again; your hook is now secured from drawing away from the plummet. As success depends much in angling at a proper depth, take due pains, and measure the depth accurately, before you begin fishing.

---

#### ORNAMENTAL FISH-PONDS.

As a small fish-pond or basin is generally allowed to add much to the beauty and ornament of a garden or being struck immediately they bite, affords much less sport than when taken with the gorge or a live bait. The proper seasons for using the snap and gorge hook, is from June until December, then fish with a live bait hooked by the lips with a single hook till March.

---

pleasure-ground, I shall here give proper directions for the management of such waters, and in the choice of fish to stock them.

A pond should not be less than six feet deep in the middle, that the fish may be enabled in winter to avoid the cold; it should have also a part that is shallow, with a clean pebbly or gravelly bottom, on which fish much delight to play in hot weather; it likewise tends to keep them in health: by their frequently rubbing themselves on the gravel, they get rid of insects or water-lice, which more or less infect all fresh-water fish, particularly in still waters. A few roots of candock weed or the water-lily, is proper to be planted, under and about which the fish will sport with infinite delight, the broad leaves affording a shady retreat in extreme heat, the stems and lower parts of these weeds are also useful to hold the spawn of the breeding fish. It is improper to plant trees close to a fish-pond, because when the leaves fall they rot, and make the water unclean, consequently injurious to the fish. The proper fish for ornamental ponds are Gold and Silver fish, Prussian or Crucian Carp, Roach, Flounders, Gudgeons, Minnows, and small Perch. To preserve those fish in small ponds, it is necessary occasionally to throw in guts of fowls, &c. also fresh grains, some crumbled bread, gentles, and small worms: parboiled green peas are a great treat to pond-fish; but those persons who have an opportunity of supplying their ponds with

---

water from rivers, conveyed in pipes, have but little occasion to feed the fish, as the river water generally contains sufficient food for the purpose. Be careful to break a hole when the pond is frozen (at least once a day) to admit fresh air, for fish cannot long exist, any more than other animals, when deprived of it. The pond should be emptied about every three years, the mud cleaned out, and stocked again with fresh fish.—

Note, it is a good practice to let a few roots of common rushes grow in parts of the inside of the ponds, most fish being fond of sucking the tender parts of the roots. Rushes also protect the spawn of fish, and the young fry retire to them as places of safety ; some persons cast into their ponds small faggots of brush wood to protect the small fish and spawn, but in very small ponds intended merely as ornamental the rushes and weeds will be sufficient for that purpose.



## APPENDIX.

---

As an advocate for Angling, I feel interested and anxious for the honour and credit of the Angler's character and conduct, therefore I beg his attention to a few observations and extracts from acts of parliament relative to the preservation of fish and fisheries.\* It should be recollected, that if the angler commits an offence or trespass from his ignorance of the laws on the subject, he is equally liable to fine and punishment as if acting by premeditated design; for it is presumed by the magistrates of courts, that from the known publicity of the laws, every person is acquainted with their regulations in respect to the protection of property, punishment for trespass, and the like. Moreover, as reasonable beings, and accountable for our misdeeds, it surely behoves us so to regulate our conduct in pursuing our pleasures and amusements, that we in nowise lose sight of or infringe the *Golden Rule*, that of "doing unto others as we would they should do unto us,"—a strict observance of which I seriously recommend to all brother anglers.

\* Of the nature and rights of fisheries, I should recommend the reader to consult Chitty's Treatise on the Game Laws, published in 1812, which treats very fully on the subject, and well deserves a place in the library of every sportsman.

---

The most recent, and the principal act to protect fisheries, was passed in the fifth year of his present Majesty's reign, from which the following extract is taken :

“ No one shall enter into any park or paddock fenced in and enclosed, or into any garden, orchard, or yard adjoining or belonging to any dwelling-house, in or through which park or paddock, garden, orchard or yard any river or stream of water shall run or be, or wherein shall be any river, stream, pond, pool, moat, stew or other water; and by any ways, means or device whatsoever shall steal, take, kill or destroy any fish bred, kept or preserved in any such river or stream, pond, pool, moat, stew or other water aforesaid, without the consent of the owner or owners thereof,\* or shall be aiding or assisting in the stealing, taking, killing or destroying any such fish as aforesaid, or shall receive or buy any such fish, knowing the same to be stolen or taken as aforesaid, and being thereof indicted within six calendar months next after such offence or offences shall have been committed, before any judge or justice of gaol delivery for the county wherein such park or paddock, garden, orchard or yard shall be, and shall on such indictment be by verdict, or his or their own confession or confessions, convicted of any such offence or offences as

\* The angler should bear it in mind, that a trespass may be committed in cases even where he has the permission of the proprietor of the water to fish; for, in many instances, the owner of the water is not the owner of the land through which it runs, and without permission be obtained from both, he is equally liable to action for trespass.

---

aforesaid, the person or persons so convicted shall be transported for seven years.

“ And for the more easy and speedy apprehending and convicting of such person or persons as shall be guilty of any of the offences before-mentioned, be it further enacted by the authority aforesaid, that in case any person or persons shall at any time after the first of June, commit or be guilty of any such offence or offences as herein before mentioned, and shall surrender himself to any of his Majesty's justices of the peace in and for the county where such offence or offences shall have been committed, or being apprehended and taken, or in custody for such offence or offences, or on any other account, and shall voluntarily make a full confession thereof, and a true discovery upon oath, of the person or persons who was or were his accomplice or accomplices in any of the said offences, so as such accomplice or accomplices may be apprehended and taken, and shall on the trial of such accomplice or accomplices give such evidence of such offence or offences, as shall be sufficient to convict such accomplice or accomplices thereof, such person making such confession and discovery, and giving such evidence as aforesaid, shall, by virtue of this act, be pardoned, acquitted and discharged, of and from the offence or offences so by him confessed as aforesaid.

“ That in case any person or persons shall take, kill or destroy, or attempt to take, kill or destroy, any fish in any river or stream, pond, pool, or other water (not being in any park or paddock, or in any garden, orchard or yard adjoining or belonging to any dwelling-house, but shall be in any other inclosed ground which shall be private property) every such

---

person being lawfully convicted thereof by the oath of one or more credible witness or witnesses, shall forfeit and pay, for every such offence, the sum of five pounds to the owner or owners of the fishery of such river or stream of water, or of such pond, pool, moat, or other water; and it shall or may be lawful to and for any one or more of His Majesty's justices of the peace of the county, division, riding or place where such last mentioned offence or offences shall be committed, upon complaint made to him or them, upon oath against any person or persons for any such last mentioned offence or offences, to issue his or their warrant or warrants to bring the person or persons so complained of before him or them; and if the person or persons so complained of shall be convicted of any of the said offences last mentioned, before such justice or justices, or any other of his Majesty's justices of the same county, division, riding or place aforesaid, by the oath or oaths of one or more credible witnesses, which oath such justice or justices are hereby authorised to administer, or by his or their own confession, then and in such case the party so convicted shall, immediately after such conviction, pay the said penalty of five pounds hereby before imposed for the offence or offences aforesaid, to such justice or justices before whom he shall be so convicted, for the use of such person or persons as the same is hereby appointed to be forfeited and paid unto, and in default thereof, shall be committed by such justice or justices to the house of correction for any time not exceeding six months, unless the money forfeited shall be sooner paid.

“ Provided nevertheless, that it shall and may be lawful to and for such owner or owners of the fishery of such river or stream of water, or of such pond, pool or other water wherein

---

any such offence or offences last mentioned shall be committed as aforesaid, to sue and prosecute for, and recover, the said sum of five pounds by action of debt, bill, plaint or information, in any of his Majesty's courts of record at Westminster; and in such action or suit no essoine, wager of law, or more than one imparlance, shall be allowed; provided such action or suit be brought or commenced within six calendar months next after such offence or offences shall have been committed.\*

“ Provided always, and be it further enacted by the authority aforesaid, that nothing in this act shall extend, or be construed to extend, to subject or make liable any person or persons to the penalties of this act who shall fish, take, or kill and carry away any fish in any river or stream of water, pond, pool, or other water wherein such person or persons shall have a just right or claim to take, kill, or carry away any such fish.

#### TO PRESERVE THE BREED OF FISH.

There are several acts of parliament to preserve fish and fisheries, by penalties and punishments for using certain nets, and taking fish under proper size, and out

\* Criminal proceedings and penalties for injuries done to private fisheries are punishable either at common law or by different statutes. The breaking the mounds of ponds maliciously, and stealing fish out of waters in enclosed grounds, is declared felony, and the offender taking fish out of waters in unenclosed grounds are subject to penalties, and the owners of fisheries and ponds are authorized to seize the nets and fishing tackle of trespassers, and to keep or destroy them as they think fit.—Vide Chitty on the Game Laws.



---

of season, from which the following quotations are made. The first worthy of notice, I believe, is an act passed in the thirteenth year of Richard II, which says,

“ No persons shall put in the waters of Thamise, Humber, Ouze, Trent, nor any other waters in any time of the year, any nets called stalkers, nor other nets or engines by which the fry or breed of Salmon, Lampreys, or any other fish may in any wise be taken or destroyed; and the waters of Lon, Wyre, Mersey, Ribble, and all other waters in Lancashire, shall be put in defence, as to taking Salmon, from Michaelmas to Candlemas, and in no other time of the year.”

By an act made in the seventeenth year of the same reign,

“ The justices of the peace and the mayor of London, on the Thames and Medway, shall survey the offences in both acts above mentioned, and shall survey and search all the weirs in such rivers, that they shall not be very strait for the destruction of such fry and brood, but of reasonable wideness, after the old assize used or accustomed; and they shall appoint under-conservators, who shall be sworn to make the like survey, search and punishment: and they shall enquire in sessions, as well by their office as at the information of the under-conservators, of all defaults aforesaid, and shall cause them which shall be thereof indicted, to come before them, and if they thereof be convicted, they shall have imprisonment, and make fine, at the discretion of the justices; and if the same be at the information of an under-conservator, he shall have half the fine.”

---

And by a later act,

“ No person shall take or knowingly have in his possession, either in water or on shore, or sell or expose to sale, any spawn, fry or brood of fish, or any unsizeable fish, or fish out of season, or any smelt not five inches long ; and any person may seize the same, together with the baskets and package, and charge a constable or other peace officer with the offender, and with the goods, who shall carry them before a justice, the same shall be forfeited and delivered to the prosecutor, and the offender shall besides forfeit twenty shillings, to be levied by distress, by warrant of such justice, and distributed half to the prosecutor, and half to the poor of the parish where the offence was committed, (and any inhabitant of such parish may nevertheless be a witness) and for want of sufficient distress, to be committed to the house of correction, to be kept to hard labour, for any time not exceeding three months, unless the forfeiture be sooner paid, provided the justice may mitigate the said penalty, so as to remit above one half: persons aggrieved may appeal to the next sessions.”

And an old act of parliament of Henry II, says,

“ No person shall fasten any nets over rivers, to stand continually night and day, on pain of forfeiting one hundred shillings to the king.”



## WEATHER TABLE.

The following Table constructed upon philosophical considerations of the attraction of the Sun and Moon, in their several positions respecting the earth, and confirmed by experience, many years actual observations, furnishes the observer without further trouble, with the knowledge of what kind of weather there is the greatest probability of succeeding, and that so near the truth, that in very few instances it will be found to fail.

New and full Moon.	Summer.	Winter.
If the new or full moon enters into the first or last quarter of the hour of 12 at noon, or between the hours of .....		
2 and 4	Very rainy .....	Snow and rain
4 and 6	Changeable.....	Fair and mild
	Fair.....	Fair
6 and 8	{ Fair, if wind at N. W. Rainy, if wind at S. or S. W. ....	{ Fair & frosty, if wind at N. or N. E. Rain or snow, if S. or S. W.
8 and 10	Ditto .....	Ditto
10	Fair.....	Fair and Frosty
2 A.M.	Ditto .....	{ Hard frost unless wind S. or S. W.
2 and 4	{ Cold with frequent showers .....	
4 and 6	Rain .....	Ditto, ditto
6 and 8	Wind and rain .....	Stormy weather
8 and 10	Changeable.....	{ Cold and rain, if wind N. snow if E.
10 and 12	Frequent showers ...	Cold with high wind

## OBSERVATIONS ON THE WEATHER.

By attending to the barometer, and observing those appearances in the atmosphere which foretell fair or foul weather, I have frequently avoided getting wet, and saved myself many fruitless journeys. I have therefore inserted the following observations, by the Rev. W. Jones and others, which I have often found useful in guiding me on this subject, and I doubt not it will be acceptable to those for whom this work is intended, as they above all other sportsmen are most interested in the changes of the weather.

## MISTS.

A white mist in the evening over a meadow with a river, will be drawn up by the sun next morning, and the day will be bright. Five or six fogs successively drawn up portend rain. Where there are high hills, and the mist which hangs over the lower lands draws towards the hills in the morning, and rolls up to the top, it will be fair; but if the mist hangs upon the hills, and drags along the woods, there will be rain.

## CLOUDS.

Against much rain, the clouds grow bigger, and increase very fast, especially before thunder. When the clouds are formed like fleeces, but dense in the middle, and bright toward the edges, with the sky clear, they are signs of a frost, with hail, snow, or rain. If clouds breed high in air, in thin white trains, like locks of wool, they portend wind and probably rain. When a general

---

cloudiness covers the sky, and small black fragments of clouds fly underneath, they are a sure sign of rain, and probably be lasting. Two currents of clouds always portend rain, and in summer, thunder.

#### DEW.

If the dew lies plentifully on the grass after a fair day, it is a sign of another. If not, and there is no wind, rain must follow. A red evening portends fine weather; but if it spreads too far upwards from the horizon in the evening, and especially morning, it foretells wind or rain, or both. When the sky in rainy weather is tinged with sea-green, the rain will increase; if with deep blue, it will be showery.

#### HEAVENLY BODIES.

A Haziness in the air which fades the sun's light, and makes the orb appear whitish, or ill defined; or at night, if the moon and stars grow dim, and a ring encircles the former, rain will follow. If the sun's rays appear like Moses's horn, if white at setting, or shorn of his rays, or goes down into a bank of clouds in the horizon, bad weather is to be expected. If the moon looks pale and dim, we expect rain; if red, wind; and if of her natural colour, with a clear sky, fair weather. If the moon is rainy throughout, it will clear at the change, and perhaps the rain return a few days after. If fair throughout, and rain at the change, the fair weather will probably return on the fourth or fifth day.

---

---

**WIND.**

If the wind veers about, much rain is pretty sure, if in changing it follows the course of the sun, it brings fair weather ; the contrary, foul. Whistling, or howling of the wind, a sure sign of rain.

**METEORS.**

The Aurora Borealis after warm days, is generally succeeded by cooler air. Shooting stars are supposed to indicate wind.

**ANIMALS.**

Before rain swallows fly low ; dogs grow sleepy and eat grass ; water fowl dive much ; fish will not bite ; flies are more troublesome ; toads crawl about ; moles, ants, bees, and many insects are very busy ; birds fly low for insects ; swine, sheep, and cattle are uneasy, and even the human body.

*The two following observations are from the ingenious  
DR. KIRWIN.*

1. When there has been no particular storm about the time of the spring equinox, (March 21) if a storm arise from the east on or before that day, or if a storm from any point of the compass arise near a week after the equinox, then, in either of these cases, the succeeding summer is generally dry, four times in fixe.

2. But if a storm arise from the S. W. or W. S. W. on or just before the spring equinox, then the summer following is generally wet, five times in six.

---

**DIRECTIONS FOR THE RECOVERY OF DROWNED PERSONS, AND PREVENTION OF PREMATURE DEATH.**

Considering that many lives are lost by drowning, which might be saved if the means recommended by the Royal Humane Society were early applied to restore suspended animation, I have inserted the rules and methods directed to be pursued in such cases by the said Society. As it is possible the angler may have occasion to receive or give assistance in such cases, trust I shall be excused for thus introducing the subject.

**TREATMENT OF DROWNED PERSONS.**

In removing the body to a convenient place, care must be taken that it be not bruised, nor shaken violently, nor roughly handled, nor carried over any man's shoulders with the head hanging downward, nor rolled upon the ground, nor over a barrel, nor lifted up by the heels; for experience proves that all these methods may be injurious, and destroy the small remains of life. The unfortunate object should be cautiously conveyed by two or more persons, or in a carriage upon straw, lying as on a bed, with the head a little raised, and kept in as natural and easy a position as possible.

The body, being well dried with a cloth or flannel, should be placed in a moderate degree of heat, but not too near a large fire. The window or door of the room should be left open, and no more persons admitted into it than those who are absolutely necessary, as the lives

---

of the patients greatly depend upon their having the benefit of pure air. The warmth most promising of success is that of a bed or blanket well heated, bottles of hot water laid at the bottoms of the feet, to the joints of the knees, and under the arm-pits, and a warming-pan moderately heated, or hot bricks wrapped in cloths, should be passed over the body. The natural and kindly warmth of a healthy person lying by the side of the body has been found in some cases, particularly of children, very efficacious.

Should the accident happen in the neighbourhood of a warm bath, brewhouse, bakehouse, glasshouse, or any fabrick where warm lees, ashes, embers, grains, sand, water, &c. are easily procured, it would be of great importance to place the body in any of these, moderated to a degree of heat little exceeding that of a healthy person; or in summer, the exposure to sunshine has been proved obviously beneficial. Friction with the hand, or with warm flannel or coarse cloth so as not to injure the skin, should also be tried with perseverance, for a considerable period of time.

The subject being placed in one or other of these advantageous circumstances as speedily as possible, a bellows should be applied to one nostril, whilst the other nostril and the mouth are kept closed, and the lower end of the prominent part of the wind-pipe is pressed backward. "The bellows is to be worked in this situation; and when the breast is swelled by it, the bellows should stop, and an assistant should press the belly upward, to



---

force the air out. The bellows should then be applied as before; and the belly again pressed; this process should be repeated from twenty to thirty times in a minute, so as to imitate natural breathing as nearly as possible, as the trachea is always open through the glottis, air conveyed through the mouth, the nostrils being closed, would necessarily pass into the lungs. If the cartilages of the larynx (throat) be pressed against the vertebræ (bones of the neck) so as to close the œsophagus; (gullet) and prevent the passage of the air into the stomach, and at the same time the mouth and left nostril be closed, and the pipe of the bellows inserted into the right nostril, the air will pass into the lungs through the wind-pipe, because that is the only opening through which it can pass; its passage into the œsophagus, or its egress through the mouth or left nostril, being prevented in the manner above described."

If there be any signs of returning life, such as sighing, gasping, twitching, or any convulsive motions, beating of the heart, the return of the natural colour and warmth, opening a vein in the arm or external jugular of the neck, may prove beneficial; but the quantity of blood taken away should not be large. The throat should be tickled with a feather, in order to excite a propensity to vomit, and the nostrils also with a feather, snuff, or any other stimulant, so as to provoke sneezing. A tea-spoonful of warm water may be administered now and then, in order to learn whether the power of swallowing be returned; and if it be, a

---

table-spoonful of warm wine, or brandy and water may be given with advantage ; and not before, as the liquor might pass into the trachea before the power of swallowing returns. The other methods should be continued with ardour and perseverance for two hours or upwards, although there should not be the least symptom of life.

In the application of stimulants, electricity has been recommended ; and when it can be early procured, its exciting effects might be tried in aid of the means already recommended ; but the electrical strokes should be given in a low degree, and gradually as well as cautiously increased.





A

**GLOSSARY OR EXPLANATION**

OF

**TECHNICAL TERMS**

USED AMONG ANGLERS.

---

*Angle*, corner or a point where two lines meet.

To *angle*, to fish with a rod, line and baited hook.

*Angling*, the art of catching fish with a rod, to which are attached a line, hook and bait.

*Bank-fishing*, angling from a bank on the side of a river or other water.

*Barbs* or *wattels*.—See wattels.

*Beard* or *barb*, of a hook, is that part a little above the point, which prevents the fish slipping off.

*Bee*.—See humble.

*Bobber* or *Brother bob*, nick-name for anglers.

*Bottom-fishing*, angling with any bait under water, touching the ground.

*Bottom*, the gut at the bottom of a fly-line, to which the hook or hooks are fixed.

*Cane*, of which fishing-rods are generally made, are bamboo, Carolina and the sugar cane.

*Caps*, pieces of coloured quills used to keep the line to the float.

*Cartilaginous*, fish without a back-bone, such as the Lamprey, &c.

---

*Chrysalis*, is the first change of a maggot or gentle; they then are brown and seem dead.

*Clearing-line*, is a few yards of strong small cord, to the end of which is fastened a heavy ring of lead or brass; if the hook should get fast to any thing, this ring is put over the rod, and suffered to go down to the hook, and by its weight generally clears the hook from what it may have struck into; if not; the angler seldom loses more than a hook, but without the assistance of a clearing-line, he frequently loses his float, as well as hook and line. The brass clearing-rings are to be preferred, because they are jointed, and in consequence can be used when the angler has a winch on his rod, in which case, the leaden ring could not be passed over the winch. These useful articles to the angler are to be met with at the tackle-shops.

*Dapping or dipping*, angling with a fly on the surface of the water, by rising and letting it fall gently thereon.

*Dead-lines*, are lines to which hooks are fastened and baited, and laid on the bottom, but to which no float or rod is attached.

*Deepes* are the deepest parts of the river Thames somewhat out of the current: to make them safe harbours for fish to breed in, &c. the boatmen who live at Hampton, Shepperton, and other places in that neighbourhood, sink their old boats in rows, leaving a channel between them; in a line with this channel they fix their boats when engaged by anglers. The largest Barbel and other fish are taken in these *deepes*, for the manner in which the boats are sunk, effectually protects them from every kind of net.

*Dip or dipping*, angling for Jack, Pike, Trout and Perch, with a line without a float, the hook baited either with a small fish or worms. Let the bait sink to the bottom, then raise it to the surface until a bite is felt. This method is practised in holes, eddies and behind weeds, sags, rushes, &c. close to the bank of rivers and other waters.

*Disgorger*, an instrument with a forked top, about six inches long, made of bone, iron, or brass: when the fish has swallowed the hook, the forked end of the *disgorger* is thrust down upon it, which disengages it, and permits it to be easily drawn out.

*Drag*, a piece of iron wire, with three or four hooks (without barbs) placed back to back, to which is fastened a long packthread line : this is used to recover any part of the tackle that may be entangled in weeds, &c. or to drag in night-lines, cork-trimmers, &c.

*Draw-knot*, made to slip or draw out.

To *dress a fly*, to make an artificial fly,

*Droppers* or *dippers* in artificial fly-fishing, the fly at the bottom of the line is called the stretcher; if more than one is used, those above are called *droppers* or *dippers*.

To *dub*, is to make the body of an artificial fly.

*Dubbing* is the wool or mohair materials with which the body of an artificial fly is made.

*Eddies* are bends or corners in rivers, where the water meets with obstruction, causing it to recoil and whirl round: fish lie much in these spots, as the motion of the water frequently brings food out of the stream, and gives it a momentary pause.

To *feed*, fish are said to be on the *feed* when they take the bait eagerly

*Feelers*, a substance projecting from the head of some flies and insects, but more known by the name of horns.

*Fishing* and *angling*, synonymous terms.

*Float-fishing*, angling with a float on the line.

*Flogging*, the angler is said to flog the water when he (for an unreasonable time) keeps whipping with a fly without having a fish rise at his bait.

*Fly*, a dub fly, an artificial fly, the body of which is large and chiefly made of wool or mohair.

*Gentles* are maggots bred from fly-blows on liver, or any putrid animal substance.

To *gorge*, to swallow.

*Greaves*, the sediment of melted tallow; to be bought at the tallow-chandlers.

*Gregarious*, those fish are termed *gregarious* who rove about in flocks or numbers together.

*Ground-bait*, greaves, bran, clay, gentles, &c. thrown into the water for the purpose of keeping the fish round the spot you intend to angle in.

*Gymp*, silk twist laced with brass, sold at all fishing-tackle shops.

*Hackle-flies*, artificial flies, whose bodies are slender and chiefly made of the hackle-feather. If they have not wings they are palmers, if with wings, they are generally called palmer-hackles.

*Heavy fish*, large fish.

*Heights*, small islands in the river Thames.

To *hook foul*, to hook a fish by any part outside its body, which sometimes happens by their swimming against the bait, and thereby acting on the float the same as a bite; by striking at the moment, the fish is *hooked foul*. This happens frequently when angling for Barble.—To *hook foul*, is also to strike your hook in weeds, &c.

*Humble* or *Bumble bee*, is the large wild bee with a black and yellow body.

*Hurl* or *Herle*, the fine fibrous parts of feathers.

*Killing-bait*, that bait which the fish are most fond of.

*Kink*, the line is said to *kink* or *kinkle*, when it gets entangled or twisted about the rod, or rings, &c.

*Knots*, water-knot, a knot that will not slip.

*Landing-hook*, a large hook with a screw shank, to fasten in about a yard of cane or other wood. This landing-hook is more portable than a landing-net, therefore preferred by some anglers; it is used to lift a large fish, or to take one from the weeds, &c. strike this hook in the gills or mouth of the fish, which would endanger breaking the line if attempted to be weighed out by the angler, with rod and line alone. The jointed stick of a parasol, makes a convenient handle for a landing-hook, as it will go in a pocket when folded.

*Landing-net*, a small net extended on an iron hoop, fastened to a pole, which is very useful in landing a large fish, to prevent straining your rod, &c.

A *leash* is three fish of any kind.

*Leather-mouthed fish* are those which have their teeth in the throat, as is the case with Barbel, Chub, Roach, Carp, Tench, Bream, Rudd, Dace, Bleak, Gudgeon, Loach and Minnows.

---

*Leger-line*, is a line with or without a float, fastened to a rod, sufficiently leaded about nine inches above the hook, so as to lie at the bottom without drifting.

*Live-bait fishing*, angling for Jack, Pike, Trout, or Perch, with a small live fish for a bait and a float on the line.

*Mohair*, goat's hair, used in making the body of artificial flies.

*Netting*, catching fish in nets.

*Nibble*, the fish are said to *nibble* when they slightly touch the bait, but avoid taking it into the mouth.

*Palmer or Hackle*, artificial flies made with or without wings.—See *hackle*.

*Paternoster-line*, a line with several hooks, from five to ten or twelve.

*Pith*, the marrow of the neck and back of oxen, &c.

To *play a fish*, to let him run a certain distance after having hooked him, then checking him by shortening the line, and again yielding to him, until he is exhausted.

*Pliers*, a small pair of pincers.

*Plummet*, a piece of lead in various shapes, for taking the depth; sold at the tackle-shops.

To *pouch*, to swallow.

*Prime*, fish are said to be *prime* when they rise to the surface, and leap out of the water: when they do this the angler considers it a good sign, as they are then on the feed.

*Punt*, a broad flat-bottomed boat, large enough to hold two or three chairs; it is used in angling on the river Thames, at Richmond, Twickenham, Kingston, Hampton, &c.

*Rank*, hooks are said to be *rank* when the points spread outwards too much: this term is particularly applied to the gorge-hook for trolling, and likewise Eel-hooks.

*Rise*, the fish are said to *rise* when they come to the surface to take a fly, or any other insect.

*Rods*, are generally made of cane, to which the line is fastened.



*Rowing for Perch*, angling with a Minnow for Perch.

*A run*, (in trolling) a bite.

*Running-tackle*, the line is so called when passed from a winch, fixed on the rod, through rings, to join the baited line. When angling with running-tackle, make a slip-knot in the line between the float and top of the rod, and put in the said knot a small piece of stick or quill about an inch long, to prevent the line running back through the rings on the rod, or you cannot strike quick from the line hanging slack.

*Scowers*, are places in rivers with a clean sandy or gravelly bottom, on which the fish feed, rub and roll themselves just before they spawn; and many continue on the *scowers* during the warm or hot months.

To *scour worms*, to free them from filth, and make them transparent, by putting them in damp moss, &c.

*Shank of a hook*, that part to which the line is tied.

*Shelf* or *shelves*, are large holes or excavations under banks of rivers, made by the violence of the water running against any particular part.

*Spears*, instruments so called for striking Salmon, Eels, Trout, Flounders, &c.

*Spud*, an iron spike made with a screw to fix in the butt of a rod or landing-net.

*Stalk* or *Stem*, the thick part of feathers used to make the feeler or horns of artificial flies.

*Stretchers*.—See droppers.

*Strike*, striking a fish is done by giving a sudden jerk from the wrist or arm, when the fish has taken the bait.

*Swims*, are deep places in rivers where the stream is not rapid: fish are mostly found in them in cool weather.

To *take* or *kill fish*, to catch fish: the words catch or caught are seldom used by anglers.

*Tickling*, when Trout are in holes under the bank (which they are fond of retiring to) they are caught by putting your hand into those places; when you feel a fish, gently scratch its belly until you reach the gills, then grasp it firm and lift the fish out. The pleasurable

titillation felt by the Trout while you are scratching or tickling it, prevents its attempt to leave the hole you find them in.

*Tought*, a length of hair or gut.

*Tripping-baits*, are a baited hook which moves along, touching the bottom.

*Trolling*, angling with a small dead fish, for a bait for Jack and Pike.

This word is derived from the French word *troller*, to stroll or rove about.

*Tumbling-bay*, is a pool of considerable depth and breadth, receiving the surplus water which falls from flood-gates, erected in rivers and canals to keep up a head of water: they are numerous in the river Lea.

To *turn* a fish, is to give him another direction by checking him, when he is likely to get in among weeds, &c.

To *weigh a fish out*, to lift a fish out of the water by the line, without the aid of a landing-net.

*Warping*, is tying or twisting over, in making artificial flies.

*Wattels*, a fleshy substance like a worm, hanging from the mouth of Barbel and some other fish.

*Winch*, a machine made of brass, on which a line is kept, made of India twist, plaited silk or hair, and silk twisted.

To *whip*, or *whipping*, casting a fly with a pliant rod to any distance.

To *whip*, is also to tie on a hook to hair, gut, silk, &c.

*Note*.—Dibbing or Dapping with a fly is generally performed with a short line, standing behind a bush or high weeds, rushes, &c. but it may be successfully practised with a long line, from a bridge or other eminence; when the wind is at your back, you may then drop your fly on the surface of the water at a great distance from you, and by elevating the point of your rod the fly is easily kept from sinking.





# INDEX.

## A.

- Acids, disagreeable to fish, 40  
Aldenham, waters there described, 243  
Amwell, curious epitaph at, 219  
Angling, apology for, see table of contents; its antiquities; practice of justified, *ib.*; remarks on, for every month of the year, 246; rules and observations relative to, 252; acts relative to, 277  
Angler, anecdote of a blind one, 212—*Note*  
Angler's Progress—a song; hints to, 246  
Angler's Guide, the author's motive for publishing, see the Preface  
Angle-rod, different kinds described, 2  
Ash-fly, 188  
Astley, Mrs. J. large Trout caught by, 224—*Note*

## B.

- Baits for all kind of fish.—See *Barbel*, *Chub*, &c.  
Bait not to be taken out too quick when trolling, 21—*Note*  
Bank-runner described, 26  
Bannister's water, on the Lea, described, 225  
Barbel, the name whence derived, 41; large and abundant in the Thames and Lea, *ib.* best method of dressing them for the table, *ib.*; spawn unwholesome, *ib.*—*Note*; yield much sport to the angler, *ib.*; mode of angling for, 43; anecdote of extraordinary ill luck in Barbel-fishing, *ib.*—*Note*; prodigious number caught at one time at Shepperton, *ib.*; best ground-bait for, 45 and 38; may be taken at night and how, *ib.*; remarks on, 46; described, *ib.* remarkably large one taken by Mr. Robinson, *ib.*; anecdote of a Barbel-fisher, *ib.*—*Note*; places where they may be taken, 47

- 
- Battersea-bridge, fishery at described, 214  
 Bee, where found good bait for Chub, 192  
 Black-thorn fly, when and where found, 182—*Note*  
 Blackfriars-bridge, fishery at described, 214  
 Black-gnat fly, the artificial, an excellent bait for Chub just before dusk, 192  
 Bleak, where abundant, 101; how angled for, *ib.*; ground-bait for, *ib.*; described, *ib.*; baits for, when dapping, 102; sometimes mad, *ib.*  
 Bleak-hall, fishery at described, 225  
 Blind gentleman.—See *gentleman*  
 Blood-worms, where obtained, 157; good for various fish, *ib.*  
 Bobbing for Eels, how practised, 110  
 Bobs, what, and of what use, 161  
 Bottom-fishing.—See the Glossary of Technical Terms  
 Boots, how to make water-proof, 257  
 Bowerbank's-water, on the Lea, described, 225  
 Brandling, where obtained, 156; good for Carp, Perch, &c. *ib.*  
 Bream, where abundant, 104; when and how taken, *ib.*; tackle and baits for, *ib.*; described, 105; habits of, *ib.*  
 Brown, commendation of the boatman of that name, 212  
 Broxbourn, crown public-house, and water described, 226; great success in angling there.—*Note*  
 Bull-head.—See *Miller's Thumb*  
 Bullock's brains, how used as a bait, 50

## C.

- Cads, what, and of what use, 161 where found, *ib.*  
 Camlet-fly, has a body like a moth, the wings diapered, a good fly for grayling, to dap with in May  
 Camberwell-canal, affords good trolling, 238  
 Cannon-fly, 188  
 Carp, fine, but not abundant in the Thames and Lea, 77; how and when to angle for, *ib.*; baits for, 78; ground-baits for, 79; when first brought into England, *ib.*; long-lived, *ib.*; described, *ib.*; habits, 80; may be rendered tame, *ib.*; instances of, *ib.*

- Carthage-water, on the Lea, described, 223
- Case-worms, what, and of what use, 161
- Chain-lines for Eels, described, 271; hooks proper for, *ib.*; baits proper for, 270
- Chertsey-bridge, good fishing at, 207; fine Barbel-fishing at; fishery described
- Cheven —See *Chub*
- Chisselhurst, ponds there described, 242
- Chub, a bony fish, and inferior food, 49; called farmers' sons, *ib.*—  
*Note*: will feed all the year, *ib.*; a shy fish, *ib.*; how to angle for, 50; trolling for sometimes successful, *ib.*; baits for, *ib.*; ground-baits for, *ib.*; season for Chub-fishing, 51; remarks on, *ib.*; Lea, famous for, *ib.*; baits for, when dapping, 182; when whipping, prefer the artificial gnat, ant, and dun-coloured flies
- Clapham-common, waters on, described, 240
- Clap-bait.—See *Bobs*
- Conger Eel, grows very large, 120; how cooked at Plymouth, *ib.*; fry of, called Elvers, *ib.*; how caught, 121; described, *ib.*; best mode of cooking, *ib.*
- Cook, Matthew, singular character, 225; fond of cats, *ib.*
- Cook's-ferry, fishery at described, 225
- Cork-float, described, 5
- Cracknell, Mr. song by, 208
- Cricket, becomes a fly, 171
- Croydon-canal, affords good trolling, 238; described, *ib.*
- Cross-fishing, 199
- Crucian Carp, not very common in England, 97; a breed between the Carp and Roach, *ib.*; very prolific, *ib.*; numerous near London, *ib.*; baits and tackle for, *ib.*; when first introduced, *ib.*; described, *ib.*; habits, *ib.*; very numerous in Prussia
- Crutch or fork to take up dead lines, 201; necessary for leger lines, 202

## D.

- Dace, how to dry and preserve them, 60; mode of cooking, *ib.*; whipping for, good amusement, 62; how and where to angle for, *ib.*; remarks on, *ib.*; baits for, when dapping, 192; when whipping prefer a black gnat or dark dun artificial fly

- Dagenham-breach, contains many Jack and Pike, 241; described, *ib.*  
 Dapping.—See *Fly-fishing* (natural)  
 Dare.—See *Duce*  
 Dead-line, how made, 127  
 Dibbing.—See *Fly-fishing* (natural)  
 Dragon-fly, is a large four-winged fly, by some called the large horse-stinger and peacock fly; its body is variegated with purple, green, &c. and about two or three inches long, it has many eyes, the wings are transparent and of a bronze colour. During summer this large fly may be seen about rivers and ponds, skimming about weeds, settling on sags, rushes, &c. Artificial dragon flies are used as a bait for Salmon  
 Drowned persons, how to be treated, 288

## E.

- Eels, tackle fit for when a rod is used, 110; how taken with dead lines, *ib.*; bobbing for, how practised, *ib.*; spearing and sniggling, how practised, 111, 112, 113; where abundant, *ib.*; observations on, 115; will make their way on land, *ib.*; voracity of, *ib.*; how propagated, 116; four sorts of, 118, 119; best time to fish for, *ib.*; best mode of disabling them when caught, *ib.*; taken with dead lines, 127; taken with chain and night-lines, 270, 271  
 Elvers, fry of the Conger Eel, 120; how taken, *ib.*; how cooked, *ib.*; used as manure, *ib.*  
 Epping-forest, waters there described, 243, 244  
 Esher, good fishing at, 236

## F.

- Feathers, how died yellow, 169—*Note*  
 Fence-months, 206  
 Fern-fly, a four-winged fly, found among fern in June and July. It has a thin body of an orange colour, and is used to dap with for Chub  
 Fish-ponds, how made, 275  
 Fishes, observations on the nature of, see table of contents; can hear; live to a great age; six orders of, *ib.*

- Flies, (artificial) list of, to kill from Christmas to Michaelmas, 186; may be reduced, 166—*Note*
- Float-fishing.—See the *Glossary*
- Floats, different kinds described, 5, 6, 7; how to chuse, *ib.*
- Flounders, how to dry and preserve them, 60; where abundant, 124; how taken, *ib.*; described, 60; habits of, *ib.*; taken with dead lines, 127
- Fly, (artificial) how made, 166, 168; materials for making the green-drake, grey-drake, or cock-up tails and why so named, and stone-fly, 170, 171; materials for making all kinds of flies, 179
- Fly-fishing, (artificial) advantages of, 164; cannot be practised so often as bottom-fishing, 165; rods and lines for, 194, 195; how to throw the line in, 196; (natural) how practised, 191
- Fordige Trout.—See *Trout*
- Fuller, Mr. a good angler, remarkable for fishing late, 45.—*Note*

## G.

- Gay, his lines on artificial flies, 180
- Gentles, how produced, 152; easily procured in London, and where, *ib.*; how preserved, *ib.*; how best preserved in summer, 153 —*Note*; hook how baited with, 267
- Gentleman, one who was blind, a good angler, 212—*Note*
- George, better known by the name of Lying George, a good angler, well known some years since at Poplar-Gut, Bromley-Mills, Lea-Bridge, &c. killed a Salmon at Bromley, 133
- Godstone, waters at described, 241; good Carp fishing, *ib.* anecdote of an angler, *ib.*
- Grains, good ground bait, 82.
- Greaves, how baited with, 267; how to soak, and use for ground bait, *ib.*
- Grayling, not found near London, 129; described, *ib.*; how angled for *ib.*; is called an Umber when full grown, *ib.*
- Ground-bait, observations on, 40; how to make various kinds, 36, 37, 38, 39, caution in casting it in the water, 263
- Gudgeon, abundant in the Lea, 63; anecdote of a Gudgeon-fisher, *ib.*; season for angling for, *ib.*; mode of fishing for in the Thames and Lea, *ib.*; remarks on, *ib.*; described, 64, 65



Gudgeon, the best bait for Jack, &c. 13; where to purchase alive, *ib.*

## H.

Hackle.—See *Palmer*.

Hampton and Hampton-wick, good angling at, 213; fine Barble fishing at, 210; town and fishery described, 211

Hampton-court, fishery at described, 211

Harvest, Rev. George, Anecdote of, 63.—*Note*

Hawkins, Sir John, anecdote told by, 42, 43; his method of making artificial flies, 176, 177

Hawthorn fly, 188

Henry, better known by the name of One-Arm Harry, having lost an arm in the naval service. He was an excellent and successful angler at Bromley and Westham Mill-pools, in Roach and Eel fishing; also in dapping for Chub in Redbridge river. The ease and dexterity with which he unhooked Eels and other fish, and baited his hooks, was astonishing

Herl, (peacock's) its use in fly making, 178, 179

Hertford, town and fishery described, 218

Heron, great enemy to fish, *Note*.—See *Apology for Anglers*

Hoddesdon, town and fishery described, 221

Hook, method how to whip or tie one on, 1—*Note*; mode of baiting the gorge, 18; spring-snap, 19; dead-snap, *ib.*; snap with double hook, 20; spear or barb hook, *ib.*; bead hook, 17; how baited with worms, 267, 268; with gentles, *ib.*; with greaves, *ib.*; how to try their strength, &c. 257

Humble Bee.—See *Bee*

## I.

Isleworth-meadows, fishing at, 214

## J.

Jacobs Mr. the fishmonger, sells live baits for trolling, &c. all the year, 13

Jack, method of trolling for, 14; takes the name of Pike when weighing more than three pounds, 9; where found in the Thames, 10; abundant in the Lea, *ib.*; various places round London where they are found, 11, 12; natural baits for, 13; artificial baits for, 14; hooks used in trolling for, *ib.*; lines used in trolling for, 15, 16, 17; takes a live bait eagerly, 23; may be hooked by a snap, when dozing, 27; may be taken various ways, 25; remarkably large one taken by Col. Thornton, 26; mode of snaring, 27; one taken by Mr. Robinson in a remarkable manner, 34; mode of taking with the leger-line, 203; another snap-bait described, 272; a very excellent snap.

## K.

Kew-bridge, fishery at described, 214.

King-Fisher, a great destroyer of fish.—*Note* to Apology for Anglers.

King's Arms water, on the Lea, fishery at, 220.

Kingston and Hampton Wick, fishery at described, 212.

Kirby, improver of fish-hooks, 224.—*Note*

Knot, how to tie, 1.—*Note*; how to get information, *ib.*

## L.

Laleham, fishery at described, 206, 207.

Last spring, a fish.—See *Grayling*.

Lampern, or Seven Eyes, described, 122; where abundant, *ib.* habits of, *ib.*; live to a great age, *ib.*; were kept tame by the Roman ladies, *b.*; eight species of, 123; valuable bait for Eels, *ib.*; where they are to be bought, *ib.*

Lamprey Eel, described, 122; habits of, *ib.*; abound in the Severn, *ib.*

Laws relative to fishing, 277.

Lead, part to be taken of the gorge-hook recommended, 14.—*Note*

Lea River, abounds with Jack and Pike, 216; subscription waters in, 217; best month for angling in, 229; its fishery described.

## U

**Lea River** is an excellent school for anglers; the fish are shy, and the water is fished by the best anglers in the united kingdom, though it cannot boast of many Salmon or Trout, yet those who have attained the art of killing Chub and Dace in the River Lea by whipping with an artificial fly, and can also make a palmer, a hackle, and dub fly, will find it an easy task to kill Salmon or Trout in any other water.

**Leger-line**, for Jack, described, 203; bait proper for, *ib.*

**Lines**, should be even and round, 3; sorrel, the best colour for horse-hair lines, *ib.*; method of dying hair, gut, &c. for lines, *ib.*—*Note*; 169, 246; different sorts described, 7; should be soaked a little before you begin to fish, 252; composition for preserving, 273.

**Lines**, how to fasten to rod and to running-tackle, 8.

**Litchford**, or **Latchford Brook**.—See *Rib River*.

**Literature**, the study of recommended to anglers, &c. 248.

**Lob-worms**, where obtained, 155; good for Trout, Eels and Perch.

**Loppicus**, or **Angler**, account of.—*Note* to Apology for Anglers.

## M.

**Malt**, when soaked in water, is a good bait in some waters for Roach and Bream, ground-bait with the same, and let your baited hook touch the bottom.

**Man-of-war**, trimmer so named, 203.

**Marsh-worms**, where obtained, 155; good for Trout and Perch.

**May-flies**, (natural) how bred, 170; green-drake described, *ib.*; grey-drake described, *ib.*; stone-fly described, *ib.*; hawthorn-fly described, 188.

**Miller's Thumb**, described, 109; how to angle for, *ib.*; where abundant, *ib.*; bait for Eels, *ib.*

**Miller-fly**, is the large white moth; it is called the miller-fly from the mealy substance about its wings and body.

**Minnow**, killing bait for Trout, 103; directions for spinning, 90; artificial ones to be preferred, 92; where abundant, 103; bait for, *ib.*; described, *ib.*

**Mole river**, described, 235.

**Moss**, to scour worms.—See *worms*.

Moulsey-hurst, 311.

## N.

New River is a nursery for London anglers; here the juvenile angler makes his first essay to take small Perch, Gudgeons, Roach, Bleak, &c. either at bottom with worms or gentles, or at top by dapping with a house fly, or whipping with a small artificial gnat fly; from thence he proceeds to the River Lea, where, with attention, he may become a complete angler: the New River abounds with small fish within a mile of the Metropolis, 23.

Night-lines for Eels described, 268, 269.

## O.

Oak-fly, 188.

Oldford, trolling may be commenced between there and Temple-mills, on the river Lea, 10.

Ornamental fish-ponds, how to make and stock, 274, 275, 276.

Owl-fly, is the large white moth; it is called the owl-fly from its resembling an owl in the face and head.

## P.

Paddington-canal, contains good Jack and Pike, 238; described, *ib.*

Page's-water, on the Lea, described, 222; and the gull, *ib.*

Palmer, (plain) directions for making, 172, 175, *Note*; (golden or silver), directions for making, 175; list of, for every month in the season, 181.

Paley, Dr. a lover of angling.—*Note* to Apology for Anglers.

Pastes, many receipts for exploded, 151; sweet, for Carp, &c. how made, 148; plain, for Roach, &c. how made, 149; cheese and greaves paste for Chub and Barbel, how made, 150; patent paste, how made, *ib.*; general observations on paste, *ib.*

Perch, a bold-biting fish, 66; tackle fit for, *ib.*; numerous in the wet-docks at Blackwall, 67; live bait for, *ib.*; trolling for, *ib.*; roving and dipping for, 68; remarks on, 69; how to fish for with a live Minnow, *ib.*; where found in waters, 70; described, *ib.*;

- large one caught in the Serpentine, 71; wholesome food, *ib.*; much attracted by the colours yellow and red.
- Perdues, commendation of the boatmen of that name, 210.
- Pike, mouth of described,—see Apology for Anglers.—See *Jack*; how they take a bait, 34.
- Pink —See *Minnow*.
- Pith of the neck and spine of oxen, good bait for Chub in cold weather, how to bait with, 50.
- Plugged float, described, 6.
- Plumbing the depth, how done, 274.
- Poaching, reprobated, 23.
- Pond-fishing, observations, 244; ornamental ponds, how to make, 274.
- Pope, resembles the Perch, 108; where abundant, *ib.*; how to angle for, *ib.*
- Prickleback, used as bait for Perch, 90; how taken, *ib.*; bold and voracious, *ib.*; used in Lincolnshire as manure, *ib.*; good food for fowls, 100.
- Putney-bridge, fishery at described, 214.

## R.

- Red-worms, where obtained, 156; good for various fish, *ib.*
- Rib-river, described, 234.
- Richmond-bridge, fishing at described, 213; when high water there, at full and new moon, 214.
- Rivers in England, described by Drayton, 230.
- Rivers, several described, 231, 232, 233.
- Roach, mode of angling for in the Thames, 54; require fine fishing, *ib.*; a sitting posture to be preferred, *ib.*; best bait for, 55; ground-bait for, *ib.*; remarks on, 56; large in the Lea, *ib.*; described, *ib.*; peculiar kind, taken in Shepherd's-water, Hoddesdon, 58; how to dry and preserve them, *ib.*; best mode of cooking large ones, 60.
- Roach, a good bait for Jack in thick water.
- Robinson, Mr. a Pike taken in a remarkable manner by, 34; large Barbel caught by, 47.

Rod.—See *Angle-rod*.

Rod, how to fasten the line to it, 8; how to mend, 254.

Roding-river, contains many Jack and Pike, described, 236.

Rudd, indifferent food, 106; thrive best in ponds, *ib.*; tackle for, *ib.* where abundant, *ib.*; are Roach degenerated, *ib.*

Ruff.—See *Pope*.

Rye-house, 219.—*Note*.

## S.

Salmon, how angled for, 132, 133; habits of, *ib.*; large one taken by line and bait at Bromley, *ib.*; extraordinary large one, caught in the Thames, *ib.*; remarks on, 134; not known in warm climates, *ib.*; habits of, *ib.*; fishery of, in the Tweed, *ib.*; when they spawn, 135; and rapid growth, 134.

Salt-water fish, how caught with the angle, 136 to 147.

Seats of cork, &c. recommended, 260.

Seven Eyes.—See *Lampern*.

Shepherd's-water, on the Lea, described, 220.

Shepperton, fishery at described, 208, 209.

Shoes, mixture to make them water-proof, 256, 257.

Shorn-fly, this fly is found among the grass, especially at the time of mowing it in the month of June: the body is a dull red, and of the caterpillar kind; it has four wings, the upper are brown and husky, the under a fine blue. The artificial shorn-fly is thought by some to be a killing fly before the May-flies come.

Shooting, a line, how done, 7; with a caution.

Shrimps, good bait for Perch, &c. 158; how to bait with, *ib.*

Shury's subscription-water, on the Lea, described, 224.

Sight, keep far from the water, dark dress recommended, green dress of an angler, 252.

Skeggar, caught by whipping in the Thames, 206; supposed to be young Salmon, 64.—*Note*.

Smelts, delicious for the table, 125; described, *ib.*; habits of, *ib.*; periods of arrival in the Thames, *ib.*; how taken, *ib.*; where abundant, *ib.*; name whence derived, 126.

Snaring Jack and Pike, how practised, 27.

Snakes, will sometimes take the water, 118.—*Note*.

- Sniggling for Eels, how practised, 127; worms proper for, 128.
- Sorrel, the best colour for single hair lines, 3; how to dye that colour, *ib.*
- Sparrey's, Horse and Groom, Lea-bridge, described, 296.
- Sparrey, Mr. T. inventor of wire tops for sniggling, 128.
- Spawn of Barbel not wholesome, 42.—*Note.*
- Spearing Eels, how practised, 111.
- Staines, fine Barbel fishing at; fishery at described, 206.
- Stanmore, waters there described, 242.
- Stepney church-yard, story of the fish and the ring there, with a plate and epitaph, 92.
- Stickleback.—See *Prickleback.*
- Stone-Loach.—See *Leach.*
- Stort-river, contains many Jack and Pike, 234.
- Subscription-waters, rules observed in; the annual sum paid, 217.
- Sunbury, fishing at, 210.
- Swan and Pike on the Lea, 224; remarks on.—*Note.*
- Swim, partiality of anglers for a particular one, 41.—*Note*; anecdote illustrative of it, *ib.*
- Sydenham, waters there described, 239; since writing on Sydenham, the waters have been drawn off and the ponds are now (1815) not worth the angler's notice.

## T.

- Tackle, should be examined and repaired during winter, 246; should be examined and greased after fishing, 262; fine to be preferred, 254.
- Teddington-meadows, good fishing at; fishery described, 213.
- Tench, fine fish, but scarce near London, 72; where most abundant, *ib.*; baits for, 73; habits of, *ib.*; how to angle for, *ib.*; remarks on, *ib.*; why called the *Physician*, *ib.*; instance of the forbearance of other fish towards, 74; habits, *ib.*; remarkable one at Thornville-Royal, 75.
- Thames, places in it where Jack are found, 9, 10; the river and its fishery described, 205; angling in, when prohibited, 206; when best time to fish in, 215.

- Thames-Ditton, fishery at described, 212.  
 Thornton, Col. remarkably large Jack caught by, 26.  
 Thurlow, Lord, song by.—See table of contents.  
 Tickling Trout, described, 298.  
 Tip-capped float, described, 5.  
 Trimmers, described, 199; how made, 200; how baited, 201; how laid, *ib.*; bank-runner should be used with, 202; men-of-war trimmers, how made, *ib.*  
 Trimmer-lines, composition for preserving, 273.  
 Trolling, most favourable places for, 21; natural baits used in, 18; artificial baits used in, 14; how to bait hooks for, 15; the term, whence derived, 18; lines used in, *ib.*; rod used in, *ib.*; how to cast in the bait, 21; method of playing the fish, 22; live-bait fishing, 30.  
 Trolling-lines, composition for preserving, 273.  
 Trout, various, 95; how to angle for, 83; baits for, *ib.*; how took by tickling, 298; how fished for by night, 83; how fished with fine tackle and red-worm, 84; spinning a Minnow a killing mode of angling for, *ib.*; cross-fishing for, a destructive way, 199; hook for trolling for, represented, 87; habits of, *ib.*; scarce in the Lea and Thames, *ib.*; different Trout-streams near London described, 89; directions for baiting a Minnow for spinning, 90; artificial Minnow to be preferred, 91; anecdote of the voracity of, 92; different kinds of, 95; large one taken in the Stour, *ib.*; peculiar kind in Ireland, *ib.*; peculiar kind in Wales, *ib.*  
 Twickenham, good fishing at; fishery at described, 213.

## U.

- Umber.—See *Grayling*.  
 Uxbridge, Trout-fishing at, singular custom at, 89.

## W.

- Walker, Mr. anecdote of, 222, 223—*Note*.  
 Waltham-abbey, fishery at described, 223  
 Walton, fishing at, 210; fine Barbel fishing at; fishery at described.  
 Ware, town and fishery described, 218.



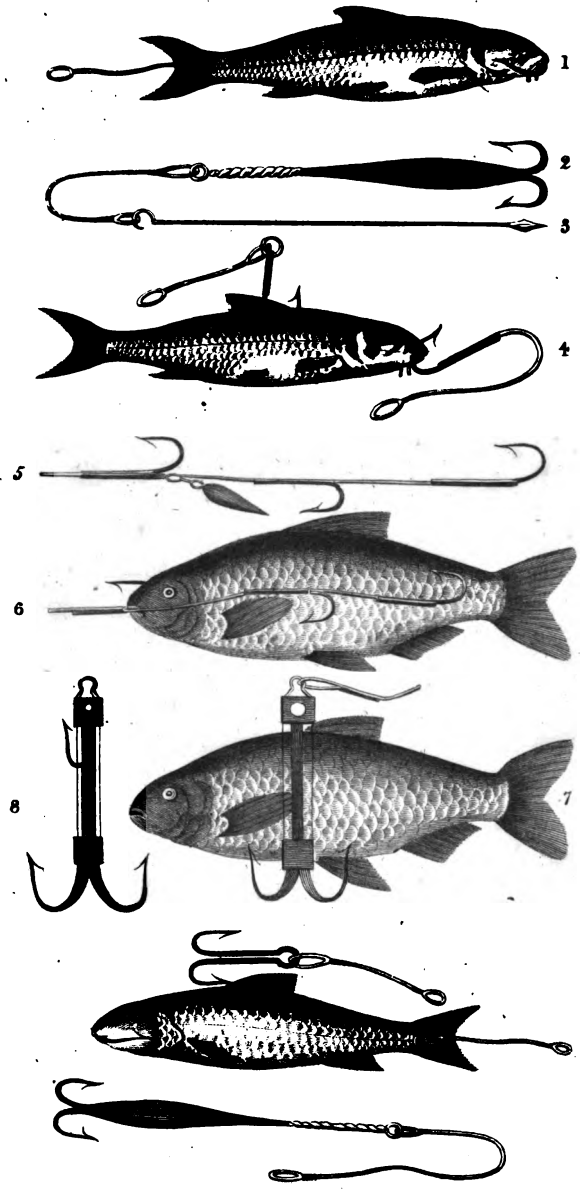
- 
- Wasps, maggot of, excellent bait for Trout, 161, 162; either used at dapping or tripping, *ib.*
- Wax, shoe-makers, how used to wax silk for tying on hooks, 167, *Note*; shoe-makers wax the best preservative for gut-lines, also stains it of a good colour, 262.
- Weather, observations on, 284.
- Wellington-water, described, 240.
- Westminster-bridge, fishery at described, 214.
- Wey-river, described, 236.
- Whipping, how performed, 196.
- Whiting, and other sea fish, 136 to 147.
- Winch, a multiplying one to be preferred, 195.
- Woodcock-fly, 188.
- Worms, useful bait, 154; six different sorts, 155; how to cleanse and keep them, 159; how to preserve a stock of, 160; hooks, how baited with, 266; half a one sometimes to be preferred, *ib.*

## Y.

- York, Duchess of, fond of angling, 210.



HOOKS BAITED for JACK & PIKE FISHING.  
*see Pages 14 & 272.*



---



---

LIST OF PLATES TO THE THIRD EDITION (1815)

OF THE

*ANGLER'S GUIDE.*

---



---

Trophies of angling.		Minnow baited for Spinning, ..	90
Frontispiece.		Fish and the Ring, .....	92
Angler going out, .....	ix	Stone-Loach, .....	99
Angler's return, .....	xi	Bleak, engraving and cut,...	101
Anglers regaling, &c. ....	xiii	Minnow, .....	103
Apparatus, No. 1, }		Bream, .....	104
———— No. 2, }	Before the	Rudd, .....	106
———— No. 3, }	first Chap.	Miller's Thumb, .....	109
Jack, engraving and cut, ....	9	Sniggling Apparatus, ....	112
Hooks baited for Trolling, ...	12	Lamprey Eel, .....	122
Bead-hook baited, .....	20	Grayling, .....	129
Angler killing a Pike, .....	23	Salmon, ....	132
Pike taking a bait, .....	26	Mackerel, .....	136
Punt-fishing, .....	42	Cads, .....	161
Barbel, engraving and cut, ...	41	Artificial Flies, .....	164
Chub, ditto ditto, ..	49	Trimmer baited with live Bait	199
Roach, ditto ditto, ...	53	Map of the River Thames ..	205
Dace, ditto ditto, ...	60	Map of the River Lea, .....	216
Gudgeon, .....	63	Horse & Groom, Lea-bridge, }	
Perch, engraving and cut, ....	66	engraving, .....	226
Tench, ditto ditto, ....	72	Bank-fishing, .....	238
Carp, ditto ditto, ....	72	Jack taking a bait, .....	264
Trout, ditto ditto, ....	83	Snap with 4 hooks baited, ..	272
Hook for Trolling for Trout, &c.	87		

---



---

ERRATA.

*Part of the bottom line of the note in page 178 should be omitted, viz.  
and note those flies whose bodies are.*





RETURN TO the circulation desk of any

University of California Library

or to the

NORTHERN REGIONAL LIBRARY FACILITY

Bldg. 400, Richmond Field Station

University of California

Richmond, CA 94804-4698

---

ALL BOOKS MAY BE RECALLED AFTER 7 DAYS

2-month loans may be renewed by calling

(510) 642-6753

1-year loans may be recharged by bringing books  
to NRLF

Renewals and recharges may be made 4 days  
prior to due date

---

DUE AS STAMPED BELOW

---

FEB 12 1996

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---







YB 10492

8

